

UC-NRLF



\$B 257 384



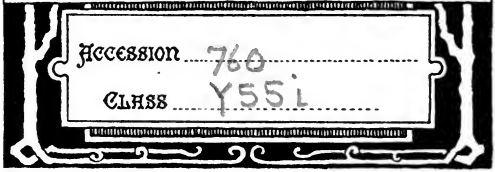
LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

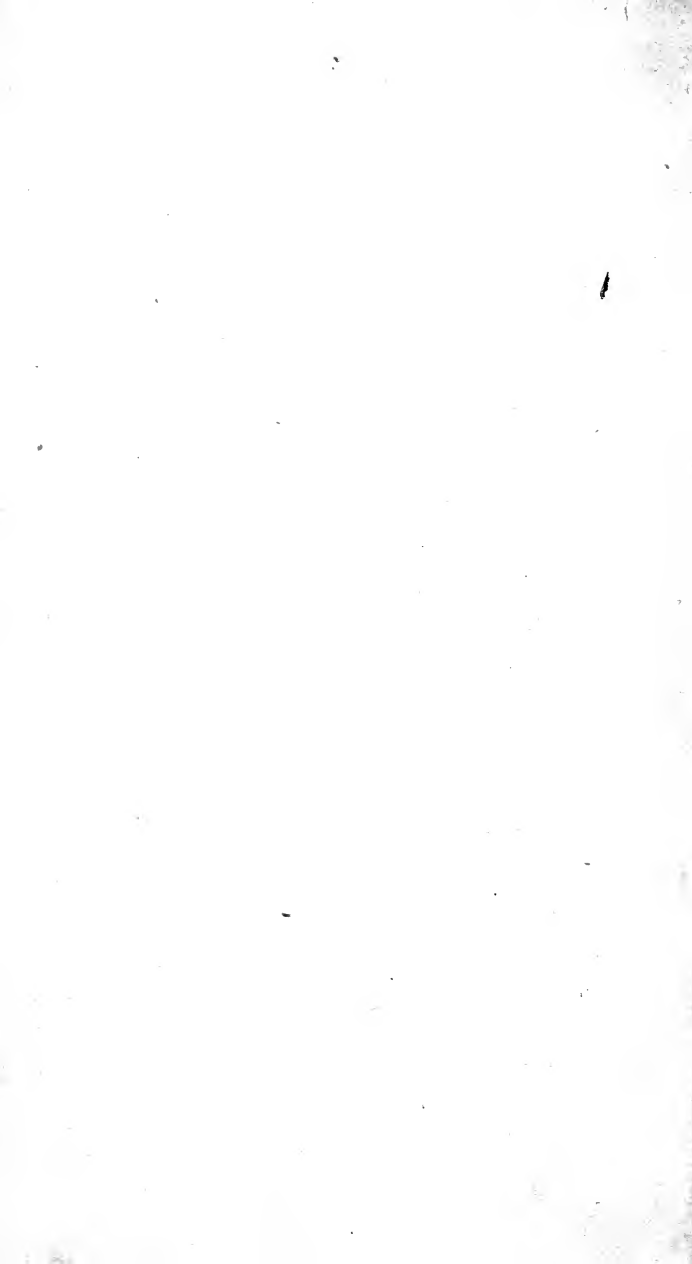


JANE K. SUTHER  
LIBRARY FUND.

Accession 760  
CLASS Y551









AN INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
LATIN TONGUE,  
FOR THE USE OF YOUTH.

A NEW EDITION

BY C. D. YONGE, B. A.

AUTHOR OF

“AN ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON,” “YONGE’S GRADUS AD PARNASSUM,”  
ETC. ETC.



ETON: WILLIAMS & SON;

LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND Co.

MDCCCLXXIV.

1874

SATHER

INDEX.

PA 2087  
E8  
1874  
MAIN

	Pag.		Pag.
Alphabet	5	QUÆ GENUS; or, Nouns He-	
Parts of Speech	6	teroclite	77
NOUNS—		AS IN PRÆSENTI; or, the Per-	
Numbers, Cases, &c.	<i>ib.</i>	fect and Supines of Verbs	80
Declension of Substantives	8	SYNTAXIS—	
,, Adjectives	15	Concordantiæ Tres	88
Comparison of Adjectives	19	Nominum Constructio—	
Pronouns	21	Substantiva	92
Declension of	22	Adjectiva	93
VERBS—		Pronominum Constructio	98
Voices	24	Verborum Constructio	99
Moods	25	Verba Infinita	107
Tenses	26	Gerundia	109
Gerunds and Supines	27	Supina	110
Participles	<i>ib.</i>	Verba Impersonalia	<i>ib.</i>
Numbers and Persons	28	De Tempore	111
The Verb <i>Esse</i>	<i>ib.</i>	Spatium Loci	112
Declension of Verbs <i>Regular</i>	31	Nomina Locorum	<i>ib.</i>
Conjugation of ditto—Active	32	Adverbiorum Constructio	113
,, ,, Passive	45	Conjunctionum Constructio	114
Declension of <i>Irregular</i>		De Relativo	118
Verbs	58	Præpositionum Constructio	119
Conjugation of ditto	<i>ib.</i>	Interjectionum Constructio	121
<i>Defective</i> Verbs	63	PROSODIA	122
Adverbs	65		
Conjunctions	<i>ib.</i>	Propria quæ Maribus	
Prepositions	66	construed	132
Interjections	68	Nouns Heteroclite construed	140
The Three Concords	<i>ib.</i>	As in Præsentii construed	144
PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS; or,		Syntaxis construed	157
the Genders of Nouns	73	Prosodia construed	206

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



AN INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
LATIN TONGUE.

~~~~~  
The Latin Letters are thus written :

*Capitals.*

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

*Small, or common.*

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named *Vowels*; *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

The rest are called *consonants*.

A *vowel* makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e*.

A *consonant* cannot be sounded without a vowel, as *be*.

*Consonants* are divided into liquids, double letters, and mutes.

The *liquids* are *l, m, n, r* : The *double letters* are *j, x, z* :

The remaining letters are called *mutes*.

A *syllable* is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, pronounced in a breath.

A *diphthong* is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

There are six diphthongs, *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe*.\*

---

\* Besides these six we meet with *ua, ue, ui, uo*, sounded in one syllable, occurring only after the consonants, *g, q, or s*; but they want one distinguishing property of diphthongs, for diphthongs are naturally *long* in quantity, while these are sometimes long and sometimes short. And some consider that in these combinations *u* should be considered a consonant, and written *v*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are Seven :

Noun, Pronoun, Verb, declined ;

Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined.

## OF A NOUN.

NOUNS are of two kinds, *Substantives* and *Adjectives*.

A *substantive* expresses by itself alone the object of which we are speaking ; as, *hōmo*,\* a man ; *ōrātor*, an orator ; *liber*, the book.

An *adjective* always requires to be joined to a substantive, of which it shows the nature or quality ; and is either a common adjective ; as, *bōnus puer*, a good boy ; or a *participle* (formed from, and being part of a verb) ; as, *fūrens fæmīna*, a woman raging.

## NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers ; the singular, and the lural.

The singular speaketh but of one ; as *pāter*, a father

The plural speaketh of more than one ; as, *patres*, fathers.

## CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number :

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The *nominative* case names the subject of a sentence, and marks the quarter from which an action proceeds ; as, *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The *genitive* case denotes connection between two objects, and in English is commonly translated by "of," or by 's ; as, *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

The *dative* case denotes that with reference to which the subject (named by the nominative case) acts ; or in

---

\* A crescent (◌̆) placed over a vowel denotes that the syllable is *short* ; a straight line (◌̄) denotes that it is *long*.

reference to which it possesses this or that quality: and in English it is commonly expressed by the sign "to" or "for," pointing out the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the thing spoken of tends; as, *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master; *patriæ suæ idoneus*, useful to his country.

The *accusative* case expresses the object, whether person or thing, affected by the action spoken of; as, *amo magistrum*, I love the master; *condo domum*, I build a house.

The *vocative* case is used in addressing people or things; as, *O magister*, O master.

The *ablative* case serves to denote the person or thing from whom or from which anything is taken; and also many other relations of substantives, which are expressed in most other languages by prepositions, such as, "in," "with," "from," or "by." Also, the word "than" after an adjective of the comparative degree is often a sign of the ablative case; as, *cum magistro*, with the master; *in Italiâ*, in Italy; *vir fortior Cæsare*, a man braver than Cæsar.

#### GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

The GENDERS of nouns are three; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

Some substantives are called *common*, being such as denote an occupation or quality common to both males and females, and admitting adjectives of either the masculine or feminine gender to be joined with them, according as the subject is male or female; as, *meus parens*, or *mea parens*, "my parent," according as the father or mother is spoken of.

Some are called *epicene*, being such as have only one grammatical gender, which comprehends both sexes; as, *hic passer*, this sparrow; *hæc aquila*, this eagle; without regard to the difference of sex.

Some are called *doubtful*, being such as are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, without regard to the actual sex of the animal spoken of; as, *hic anguis* or *hæc anguis*, this snake.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.

## THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The First declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *æ*, and has the nominative case ending in *ǎ*, of either the masculine or feminine gender ; as, *scrība*, a scribe ; *via*, a way ; or, (in the case of words derived from Greek, being mostly proper names) in *as* or *es* of the masculine, and in *ē* of the feminine gender. These last make the genitive singular to end in *ēs*.

| <i>Singular.</i> |                            | <i>Plural.</i>                |            |
|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|
| N.               | Mūs-a, <i>a song,</i>      | N. Mūs-æ, <i>songs,</i>       |            |
| G.               | Mūs-æ, <i>of a song,*</i>  | G. Mūs-ārum, <i>of songs,</i> |            |
| D.               | Mūs-æ, <i>to a song,</i>   | D. Mūs-is, <i>to songs,</i>   |            |
| Acc.             | Mūs-am, <i>a song,</i>     | A. Mūs-as, <i>songs,</i>      |            |
| V.               | Mūs-a, <i>o song,</i>      | V. Mūs-æ, <i>o songs,</i>     |            |
| Abl.             | Mūs-â, <i>from a song.</i> | A. Mūs-is, <i>from songs.</i> |            |
|                  |                            |                               |            |
| N.               | Ænēas,                     | Anchīses,                     | Pēnēlōpē,  |
| G.               | Ænēæ,                      | Anchīsæ,                      | Pēnēlōpēs, |
| D.               | Ænēæ,                      | Anchīsæ,                      | Pēnēlōpæ,  |
| Acc.             | Ænēān,                     | Anchīsēn,                     | Pēnēlōpēn, |
| V.               | Ænēā,                      | Anchīsā,†                     | Pēnēlōpē,  |
| Abl.             | Ænēâ.                      | Anchīsâ.                      | Pēnēlōpē.  |

One or two feminine substantives in *ǎ*, derived from masculines in *us*, make the dat. and abl. plural in *ābus* as well as in *is* ; as, *filiā*, a daughter, *filiabus* or *filiis*.

Also feminine proper names ending in *ǎ*, derived from the Greek, are used in Latin (especially by the poets) with either accusative *an* or *am* ; and *an*, when used, follows the quantity of the Greek accusative, so that we find *Maiān*, *Electrān*.

---

\* The Epic Poets occasionally retain the older form, which used to end in *aī* ; as, *Aulāi* in medio, for *Aulæ*. Virg.

† Horace in his Satires uses this vocative case with *ǎ*.



## THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The second declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*, and the nominative to end in *ēr* and *īr* of the masculine gender only; as, *puer*, a boy; *māgister*, a teacher; *vir*, a man: in *us*, usually of the masculine gender; as, *dōmīnus*, a master; but sometimes of the feminine; as, *hūmus*, the ground; or of the neuter, as, *vīrus*,\* poison: in *um* of the neuter gender only; as, *regnum*, a kingdom: and (in the case of a few proper names derived from the Greek) in *ōs* of the masculine or feminine gender, as, *Dēlōs*; and in *ōn* of the neuter, as, *Iliōn*.

*Singular.*

- N. Puer, *a boy*,  
 G. Puēri, *of a boy*,  
 D. Puēro, *to a boy*,  
 A. Puērum, *a boy*,  
 V. Puer, *o boy*,  
 A. Puēro, *by a boy*.

*Singular.*

- N. Dōmīnus, *a master*,  
 G. Dōmīni, *of a master*,  
 D. Dōmīno, *to a master*,  
 A. Dōmīnum, *a master*,  
 V. Dōmīne, *o master*,  
 A. Dōmīno, *by a master*.

*Singular.*

- N. Māgister, *a teacher*,  
 G. Māgistri, *of a teacher*,  
 D. Māgistro, *to a teacher*,  
 A. Māgistrum, *a teacher*,  
 V. Māgister, *o teacher*,  
 A. Māgistro, *by a teacher*.

*Plural.*

- N. Puēri, *boys*,  
 G. Puērōrum, *of boys*,  
 D. Puēris, *to boys*,  
 A. Puēros, *boys*,  
 V. Puēri, *o boys*,  
 A. Puēris, *by boys*.

*Plural.*

- N. Dōmīni, *masters*,  
 G. Dōmīnōrum, *of masters*,  
 D. Dōmīnis, *to masters*,  
 A. Dōmīnos, *masters*,  
 V. Dōmīni, *o masters*,  
 A. Dōmīnis, *by masters*.

*Plural.*

- N. Māgistri, *teachers*,  
 G. Māgistrōrum, *of teachers*,  
 D. Māgistris, *to teachers*,  
 A. Māgistros, *teachers*,  
 V. Māgistri, *o teachers*,  
 A. Māgistris, *by teachers*.

\* Nouns of the neuter gender of this declension ending in *us* make the accusative and vocative singular to end in *us*, and have no plural; except that Lucretius has *Pēlāgē* as the accusative plural of *Pēlāgus*.

## Singular.

- N. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*  
 G. Regn-i, *of a kingdom,*  
 D. Regn-o, *to a kingdom,*  
 A. Regn-um, *a kingdom,*  
 V. Regn-um, *o kingdom,*  
 A. Regn-o, *from a kingdom.*

- N. Dēlōs,  
 G. Dēli,  
 D. Dēlo,  
 A. Dēlōn,  
 V. Dēlē,  
 A. Dēlo.

## Plural.

- N. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*  
 G. Regn-ōrum, *of kingdoms*  
 D. Regn-is, *to kingdoms,*  
 A. Regn-a, *kingdoms,*  
 V. Regn-a, *o kingdoms,*  
 A. Regn-is, *from kingdoms.*

- Iliōn,  
 Ilii,  
 Ilio,  
 Iliōn,  
 Iliōn,  
 Ilio.

The genitive case of words ending in *ius* or *ium* was originally *ī*, not *ii*, and *ii* is never used by Virgil or Horace (except in the case of the adjective *ēgrēgii*,) though it occurs occasionally in Ovid.

The vocative of words ending in *us* terminates in *e*, except *Deus*, God, which makes *Deus* in the vocative; and words in *ius*, which make the vocative in *i*; as, *fīlius*, a son, *fīlī*. But proper names derived from the Greek ending in *ius* make the vocative in *e*; as, *Cynthius*, *Cynthie*.

All nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases alike in both numbers. And all nouns whatever, except those of the first declension ending in *as* or *es*, and those of the second ending in *us* or *ōs*, make the nominative and vocative alike in both numbers.

## THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The third declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *is*, and in the nominative it ends in *e*, *o* (and in words derived from the Greek in *a*, *i*, and *y*,) *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, and *x*, of which those ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *t*, are of the neuter gender only (except *Præneste*, which, as the name of a town, is used also in the feminine.) Those with the other terminations are of various genders, except that those ending in *o*, *ns*, and *x*, are never neuter.

Of nouns of this declension some are *parisyllabic* (that is, they do not increase in the genitive case,) as, *nūbes, nūbis*; some are *imparisyllabic* (that is, they do increase in the genitive case,) as, *lapis, lapīdis*.\* Some

\* In the case of imparisyllabic words, there is a great variety in the manner in which the increase in the genitive case is formed: the following are some of the principal varieties. Words ending in—

- a* make the gen. in *ātis, as poēma, poemātis.*  
*o* *īnis, as virgo, virgīnis.*  
*ōnis, as leo, leōnis.*  
*ōnis, as Măcēdo, Măcēdōnis.*  
*y* *yōs, as Tīphys, Tīphyōs.*  
*c* *ctis, as lac, lactis.*  
*l* *lis, as ānīmal, ānīmālis; sal, sālis; mel, mellis.*  
*n* { *ānis, as Titān, Titānis.*  
*ēnis, as Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.*  
*īnis, as Delphīn, Delphīnis.*  
*īnis, as carmēn, carmīnis.*  
*ōnis, as Mărăthon, Mărăthōnis.*  
*ōnis, as cănōn, cănōnis.*  
*ontis, as Xenophon, Xenophontis.*
- r* by adding *is, as calcar, calcāris.*  
*jūbar, jubāris.*  
*carcer, carcēris.*  
*ver, vēris.*  
*hōnor, hōnōris.*  
*æquor, æquōris.*  
*fur, fūris.*  
*murmur, murmūris; but far makes farris;*  
*īter, ītērnis; Jūpīter, Jōvis; cor, cor-*  
*dis; rōbur, rōbōris.*
- as* in *ātis, as pietās, pietātis:*  
 but in words derived from the Greek—  
*in ādis, as lampās, lampādīs.*  
*antis, as gīgas, gīgantīs.*
- We find also *mas, mārīs; vas, vāsīs; vas, vādīs; as, assīs.*
- ēs* in *ītis, as mīlēs, mīlītīs.*  
*ēs* in *ētīs, as sēgēs, sēgētīs.*
- We find also *quies, quiētīs; pes, pēdīs; hāeres, hārēdīs; Cērēs.*  
*Cērērīs.*
- is* in *ērīs, as cīnis, cīnērīs.*  
*īdīs, as lapis, lāpīdīs.*
- We find also *līs, lītīs; sanguis, sanguīnis; glīs, glīrīs.*
- ns* } by changing *s* into *tīs*, { *as pārens, pārentīs.*  
*rs* } { *ars, artīs.*
- So also we find *trabs, trābīs; urbs, urbīs; hyems, hyēmīs; cœlebs,*  
*cœlībīs; princeps, princīpīs; but frons.*  
*(a leaf,) frondīs; glans, glandīs.*

parisyllabic nouns ending in *is* make the accusative case singular to end in *im*,\* as, *turris*, *turrim*; and these and some others make the ablative to end both in *i* and *e*, as, *puppis*, abl. *puppi* and *puppe* (one, *vis*, makes only *vi*.) All nouns of the neuter gender form their nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *a*; those which end in *al*, *ar* (except *far*,) and *e*, make them in *ia*. And such words, and most parisyllabic substantives of this declension, form their genitive case plural in *ium*.†

Words ending in

*ōs* make the gen. in *ōris*, as *flōs*, *flōris*.

*ōtis*, as *dos*, *dōtis*.

also *os* (a bone,) *ossis*.

*oīs*, as *heros* (borrowed from the Greek,) *heroīs*.

*us*, when neut. in *ēris*, as *opus*, *opēris*.

*ōris*, as *pēcus*, *pēcōris*.

when fem. in *ūtis*, as *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.

*ūdis*, as *pēcus*, *pēcūdis*.

We find also *Vēnus*, *Vēneris*; *grus*, *gruis*: and the masculine *mus*, *mūris*.

*x* in *cis*, as *pax*, *pācis*.

*fax*, *fācis*.

*vervex*, *vervēcis*,

*nex*, *nēcis*.

*cornix*, *cornīcis*.

*cālix*, *cālīcis*.

*vox*, *vōcis*.

*Cappadox*, *Cappādōcis*.

*lux*, *lūcis*.

*nux*, *nūcis*.

*lynx*, *lynīcis*.

But *ex* makes also *īcis*, as *lātex*, *lātīcis*; we find also *rex*, *rēgis*; *grex*, *grēgis*; *rēmex*, *rēmīgis*; *nix*, *nīvis*; *nox*, *noctis*; *Phryx*, *Phrýgis*.

\* Some, being chiefly Greek proper names, make the accusative singular in *in*, as *Pāris*, *Pārīn*, and these make the vocative in *ī*, as *Pārī*. Some imparisyllabic words also, derived from the Greek, being chiefly proper names, make the accusative singular to end in *ā*; and if they have a plural number, the plural nominative ends in *ēs*, and the accusative in *ās*, as *Pallās*, the goddess, *Pallādā*; *Pallās*, the man, *Pallanta*; *lampās*, acc. sing. *lampāda*, nom. and voc. pl. *lampādēs*, acc. *lampādās*. These words also sometimes are used by the poets with the dative case plural in *āsīn*, as *Trōās*, a Trojan woman, *Trōādā*. *Trōādēs*, *Trōāsīn*, *Trōādās*.

† *Vātes*, *sēnex*, *jūvēnis*, *āpis*, *cānis*, *vōlūcris*, are exceptions to this rule, and form their genitive plural in *ium*, not in *ium*. Most nouns of one syllable make the genitive plural in *um*; those of two or more syllables ending in *ns* or *rs*, make it both in *ium* and *um*. the former being the most common form in prose.

Proper names ending in *as*, *antis*, make the vocative case singular to end in *ā*, as *Calchas*, *Calchantis*, voc. *Calchā*; and those in *es*, *is*, make it *ēs* and in *ē*, and make the accusative in *em* or in *ēn*; as, *Sophocles*, *Sophoclis*, accus. *Sophoclem* or *Sophoclen*, voc. *Sophocles* or *Sophoclē*.

*Singular.*

- N. Nūbes, *a cloud*,  
 G. Nūbis, *of a cloud*,  
 D. Nūbi, *to a cloud*,  
 A. Nūbem, *a cloud*,  
 V. Nūbes, *o cloud*,  
 A. Nūbe, *by a cloud*.

*Singular.*

- N. Lāpis, *a stone*,  
 G. Lāpīdis, *of a stone*,  
 D. Lāpīdi, *to a stone*,  
 A. Lāpīdem, *a stone*,  
 V. Lāpis, *o stone*,  
 A. Lāpīde, *by a stone*.

*Singular.*

- N. ōpus, *a work*,  
 G. ōpēris, *of a work*,  
 D. ōpēri, *to a work*,  
 A. ōpus, *a work*,  
 V. ōpus, *o work*,  
 A. ōpēre, *by a work*.

*Singular.*

- N. Māre, *a sea*,  
 G. Māris, *of a sea*,  
 D. Māri, *to a sea*,  
 A. Māre, *a sea*,  
 V. Māre, *o sea*,  
 A. Māri, or Māre, *by the sea*.

*Plural.*

- N. Nūbes, *clouds*,  
 G. Nūbium, *of clouds*,  
 D. Nūbibus, *to clouds*,  
 A. Nūbes, *clouds*,  
 V. Nūbes, *o clouds*,  
 A. Nūbibus, *by clouds*.

*Plural.*

- N. Lāpīdes, *stones*,  
 G. Lāpīdum, *of stones*,  
 D. Lāpīdibus, *to stones*,  
 A. Lāpīdes, *stones*,  
 V. Lāpīdes, *o stones*,  
 A. Lāpīdibus, *by stones*.

*Plural.*

- N. ōpēra, *works*,  
 G. ōpērum, *of works*,  
 D. ōpēribus, *to works*,  
 A. ōpēra, *works*,  
 V. ōpēra, *o works*,  
 A. ōpēribus, *by works*.

*Plural.*

- N. Māria, *seas*,  
 G. Mārium, *of seas*,  
 D. Māribus, *to seas*,  
 A. Māria, *seas*,  
 V. Māria, *o seas*,  
 A. Māribus, *by seas*.

Besides these words, there are some proper names derived from the Greek, which belong mainly to the second declension, but have some cases (especially in poetry) which belong to the third:

N. Orpheus,  
 G. Orphei, or Orpheös,  
 D. Orpheo, or Orphěi, contr. Orphē,  
 A. Orpheum, or Orphěä, contr. Orphäe,  
 V. Orpheu,  
 A. Orpheo.

Sappho is thus declined :

N. Sappho,  
 G. Sapphûs,  
 D. Sappho,  
 A. Sappho,  
 V. Sappho,  
 A. Sappho.

#### THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive case singular to end in *ûs*, and in the nominative ends in *us*, being of either the masculine or feminine gender ; or in *u*, of the neuter gender.

##### *Singular.*

N. Gräd-us, *a step*,  
 G. Gräd-ûs, *of a step*,  
 D. Gräd-ui, *to a step*,  
 A. Gräd-um, *a step*,  
 V. Gräd-us, *o step*,  
 A. Gräd-u, *with a step*.

##### *Plural.*

N. Gräd-us, *steps*,  
 G. Gräd-uum, *of steps*,  
 D. Gräd-ibus, *to steps*,  
 A. Gräd-us, *steps*,  
 V. Gräd-us, *o steps*,  
 A. Gräd-ibus, *with steps*.

The dative in *ui* is sometimes contracted into *û*, both in poetry and prose, as, *Parce metû*.—Virg.

##### *Singular.*

N. Cornu, *a horn*,  
 G. Cornûs, *of a horn*,\*  
 D. Cornui, *to a horn*,\*  
 A. Cornu, *a horn*,  
 V. Cornu, *o horn*,  
 A. Cornu, *with a horn*.

##### *Plural.*

N. Cornua, *horns*,  
 G. Cornuum, *of horns*,  
 D. Cornibus, *to horns*,  
 A. Cornua, *horns*,  
 V. Cornua, *o horns*,  
 A. Cornibus, *with horns*.

*Dõmus*, a house, belongs partly to the fourth declension and partly to the second.

\* But the genitive and dative cases singular of words in *u* are scarcely ever found.

*Singular.*

- N. Dömus, *a house,*  
 G. Dömûs, *of a house,*  
 D. Dömui & dömo, *to a house,*  
 A. Dömum, *a house,*  
 V. Dömus, *o house,*  
 A. Dömo, *by a house.*

*Plural.*

- N. Dömus, *houses,*  
 G. Dömuum and dömorum, *of houses,*  
 D. Dömibus, *to houses,*  
 A. Dömos, *houses,*  
 V. Dömus, *o houses,*  
 A. Dömibus, *by houses.*

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei*, and in the nominative ends in *es*, being always of the feminine gender, with the exception of *dies*, a day, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and only masculine in the plural; as,

*Singular.*

- N. Fäci-es, *a face;*  
 G. Fäci-ēi, *of a face,*  
 D. Fäci-ēi, *to a face,*  
 A. Fäci-em, *a face,*  
 V. Fäci-es, *o face,*  
 A. Fäci-ē, *from a face.*

*Plural.*

- N. Fäci-es, *faces,*  
 G. Fäci-ērum, *of faces,*  
 D. Fäci-ēbus, *to faces,*  
 A. Fäci-es, *faces,*  
 V. Fäci-es, *o faces,*  
 A. Fäci-ēbus, *from faces.*

The termination of the genitive singular in *ei* is sometimes contracted in poetry into *é*; as, “*Libra dié somnique pares ubi fecerit horas.*”—Virg.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined like substantives, and have either three terminations, masculine, feminine, and neuter; or two, the one masculine and feminine, and the other neuter; or one termination only, serving for the three genders. Most adjectives of three terminations are declined in the masculine and neuter genders, like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension; as, *bönus*, good; *tëner*, tender; *äter*, black.

| <i>Singular.</i> |         |         | <i>Plural.</i> |           |        |
|------------------|---------|---------|----------------|-----------|--------|
| M.               | F.      | N.      | M.             | F.        | N.     |
| N. Bön-us,       | bon-a,  | bon-um, | N. Bön-i,      | bon-æ,    | bon-a, |
| G. Bon-i,        | bon-æ,  | bon-i,  | G. Bon-órum,   | bon-árum, | bon-   |
| D. Bon-o,        | bon-æ,  | bon-o,  | D. Bon-is,     |           | [órum, |
| A. Bon-um,       | bon-am, | bon-um, | A. Bon-os,     | bon-as,   | bon-a, |
| V. Bon-e,        | bon-a,  | bon-um, | V. Bon-i,      | bon-æ,    | bon-a, |
| A. Bon-o,        | bon-â,  | bon-o.  | A. Bon-is.     |           |        |

*Meus*, mine, makes in the vocative case sing. mas. *meus*, and *mí*,\* not *mee*.

| <i>Singular.</i> |          |           | <i>Plural.</i> |             |              |
|------------------|----------|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| M.               | F.       | N.        | M.             | F.          | N.           |
| N. Těn-er,       | teně-ra, | teně-rum, | N. Tene-ri,    | tene-ræ,    | tene-ra,     |
| G. Tene-ri,      | tene-ræ, | tene-ri,  | G. Tene-rórum, | tene-rárum, |              |
| D. Tene-ro,      | tene-ræ, | tene-ro,  | D. Tene-ri,    |             | [tene-rórum, |
| A. Tene-rum,     | -ram,    | -rum,     | A. Tene-ros,   | tene-ras,   | tene-ra,     |
| V. Ten-er,       | tene-ra, | tene-rum, | V. Tene-ri,    | tene-ræ,    | tene-ra,     |
| A. Tene-ro,      | tene-râ, | tene-ro.  | A. Tene-ri.    |             |              |

| <i>Singular.</i> |        |        | <i>Plural.</i> |          |          |
|------------------|--------|--------|----------------|----------|----------|
| M.               | F.     | N.     | M.             | F.       | N.       |
| N. Āter,         | atra,  | atrum, | N. Atri,       | atræ,    | atra,    |
| G. Atri,         | atræ,  | atri,  | G. Atro-um,    | atrarum, | atrorum, |
| D. Atro,         | atræ,  | atro,  | D. Atris,      |          |          |
| A. Atrum,        | atram, | atrum, | A. Atros,      | atras,   | atra,    |
| V. Ater,         | atra,  | atrum, | V. Atri,       | atræ,    | atra,    |
| A. Atro,         | atrâ,  | atro.  | A. Atris.      |          |          |

Some adjectives in *er*, however, are declined in all the three genders like substantives of the third declension ; as, *ācer*, active.

| <i>Singular.</i> |        |       | <i>Plural.</i> |        |        |
|------------------|--------|-------|----------------|--------|--------|
| M.               | F.     | N.    | M.             | F.     | N.     |
| N. Ācer,         | acris, | acre, | N. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| G. Acris,        |        |       | G. Acrium,     |        |        |
| D. Ac-ri,        |        |       | D. Ac-ri-bus,  |        |        |
| A. Ac-rem,       | acrem, | acre, | A. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| V. Ac-er,        | acris, | acre, | V. Acres,      | acres, | acria, |
| A. Ac-ri.        |        |       | A. Ac-ri-bus.  |        |        |

\* *Mí* in the inferior Authors is occasionally used for the vocative of any gender of either number.



*Unus* one, *solus* alone, *totus* the whole, *ullus* any, *nullus* none, *alter*\* the other, *uter* whether of the two, make the genitive case singular in *īus*, and the dative in *ī*; as, †

| Singular.  |        |        | Plural.     |        |       |
|------------|--------|--------|-------------|--------|-------|
| M.         | F.     | N.     | M.          | F.     | N.    |
| N. Un-us,  | un-a,  | un-um, | N. Un-i,    | un-æ,  | un-a, |
| G. Un-īus, |        |        | G. Un-órum, | -árum, | órum, |
| D. Un-ī,   |        |        | D. Un-is,   |        |       |
| A. Un-um,  | un-am, | un-um, | A. Un-os,   | un-as, | un-a, |
| V. Un-e,   | un-a,  | un-um, | V. Un-i,    | un-æ,  | un-a, |
| A. Un-o,   | un-â,  | un-o.  | A. Un-is.   |        |       |

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as, *unæ literæ*, a letter; *una mænia*, a wall.

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like substantives of the third declension; as, *tristis* sad, *melior* better.

| Singular.    |                              | Plural.        |           |
|--------------|------------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| M.F.         | N.                           | M.F.           | N.        |
| N. Trist-is, | trist-e,                     | N. Trist-es,   | trist-ia, |
| G. Trist-is, |                              | G. Trist-ium,  |           |
| D. Trist-i,  |                              | D. Trist-ibus, |           |
| A. Trist-em, | trist-e,                     | A. Trist-es,   | trist-ia, |
| V. Trist-is, | trist-e,                     | V. Trist-es,   | trist-ia, |
| A. Trist-i,  | <i>very rarely</i> tristē. † | A. Trist-ibus. |           |

\* *Alteræ* is also used as the dat. sing. fem. of *alter*, by Corn. Nepos.

† So also words compounded of *uter*, as *neuter*, neither; *uterque*, each, fem. *utraque*, neut. *utrumque*. *Alius*, another, also makes *ālius* in the genitive case, *ālī* dat.; it also makes *āliud*, nom. and acc. sing. neut.

‡ There are in poetry a few instances of adjectives in *is* making the ablative in *e*, but they are very rare; and in adjectives of one termination, the ablative usually ends in *i*, except in words ending in *x*, increasing short, or in *ens* or *ans*, whose ablative most commonly ends in *e*, though *i* also is found, and except *pauper*, *senex*, *juvenis*, and *princeps*, and adjectives ending in *ēs*, as *sūperstēs*, which make the ablative in *e* only.

*Singular.*

| M.F.          | N.                  |
|---------------|---------------------|
| N. Měli-or,   | měli-us,            |
| G. Měli-ōris, |                     |
| D. Měli-ōri,  |                     |
| A. Měli-ōrem, | měli-us,            |
| V. Měli-or,   | měli-us,            |
| A. Měli-ōre,  | <i>or</i> měli-ōri. |

*Plural.*

| M.F.            | N.        |
|-----------------|-----------|
| N. Měli-ōres,   | meli-ōra, |
| G. Měli-ōrum,   |           |
| D. Měli-ōřibus, |           |
| A. Měli-ōres,   | měli-ōra, |
| V. Měli-ōres,   | měli-ōra, |
| A. Měli-ōřibus. |           |

Adjectives of one termination, which however have two in acc. sing. and in nom. acc. and voc. pl. are also declined like substantives of the third declension, as *fēlix* happy, *ingens* vast.—And some have no neuter gender at all, except in particular cases, of which the most common are the dat. and abl. sing. and have never any distinctive neuter termination; as, *měmor* mindful, *sūperstēs* surviving.

*Singular.*

| M.F.         | N.                 |
|--------------|--------------------|
| N. Fēl-ix,   |                    |
| G. Fēlī-cis, |                    |
| D. Fēlī-ci,  |                    |
| A. Fēlī-cem, | fēl-ix,            |
| V. Fēl-ix,   |                    |
| A. Fēlī-ci,  | <i>or</i> feli-ce. |

*Plural.*

| M.F.           | N.        |
|----------------|-----------|
| N. Fēlī-ces,   | fēlī-cia, |
| G. Fēlī-cium,  |           |
| D. Fēlī-cibus, |           |
| A. Fēlī-ces,   | fēlī-cia, |
| V. Fēlī-ces,   | fēlī-cia, |
| A. Fēlī-cibus. |           |

*Singular.*

| M.F.         | N.                 |
|--------------|--------------------|
| N. Ingens,   |                    |
| G. Ingentis, |                    |
| D. Ingenti,  |                    |
| A. Ingentem, | ingens,            |
| V. Ingens,   |                    |
| A. Ingenti,  | <i>or</i> ingente. |

*Plural.*

| M.F.           | N.        |
|----------------|-----------|
| N. Ingentes,   | ingentia, |
| G. Ingentium,  |           |
| D. Ingentibus, |           |
| A. Ingentes,   | ingentia, |
| V. Ingentes,   | ingentia, |
| A. Ingentibus. |           |

*Singular.*

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| N. Měmor,   |                   |
| G. Memōris, |                   |
| D. Měmōri,  |                   |
| A. Měmōrem, |                   |
| V. Měmor,   |                   |
| A. Měmōre,  | <i>or</i> měmōri. |

*Plural.*

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| N. Měmōres,   |  |
| G. Měmōrum,   |  |
| D. Měmōřibus, |  |
| A. Měmōres,   |  |
| V. Měmōres,   |  |
| A. Měmōřibus. |  |

*Ambo* both, and *duo* two, are nouns adjective, and are thus declined, in the plural number only :

|              |           |           |                   |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------|
| N. Amb-o,    | amb-æ,    | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| G. Amb-ōrum, | amb-ārum, | amb-ōrum, | <i>of both.</i>   |
| D. Amb-ōbus, | amb-ābus, | amb-ōbus, | <i>to both.</i>   |
| A. Amb-os,   | amb-as,   | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| V. Amb-o,    | amb-æ,    | amb-o,    | <i>both.</i>      |
| A. Amb-ōbus, | amb-ābus, | amb-ōbus, | <i>with both.</i> |

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of signification, or comparison; the positive, the comparative, and the superlative :

I. The positive denotes the quality of a thing absolutely; as, *doctus* learned, *brēvis* short.

II. The comparative increases, or lessens the quality; as, *doctior* more learned, *brēvior* shorter, or more short :

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or* in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us* in the neuter; as, of

*Doctus*, gen. *docti*, is formed *doctior*, more learned :  
of

*Brēvis*, dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvior*, shorter.

III. The superlative increases, or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as, *doctissimus* most learned, or very learned; *brevissimus* shortest, most short, or very short :

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*; as, of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. *brēvi*, is formed *brēvissimus*, shortest.

*Note.* Many Adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparisons irregularly; as,

|                 |         |                 |          |                   |           |
|-----------------|---------|-----------------|----------|-------------------|-----------|
| <i>Bōnus</i> ,  | good;   | <i>mēlior</i> , | better;  | <i>optīmus</i> ,  | best.     |
| <i>Mālus</i> ,  | bad;    | <i>pējor</i> ,  | worse;   | <i>pessīmus</i> , | worst.    |
| <i>Magnus</i> , | great;  | <i>mājor</i> ,  | greater; | <i>maxīmus</i> ,  | greatest. |
| <i>Parvus</i> , | little; | <i>mīnor</i> ,  | less;    | <i>mīnīmus</i> ,  | least.    |
| <i>Multus</i> , | much;   | <i>plus</i> ,   | more;    | <i>plūrīmus</i> , | most.     |

*Nēquam*, wicked; *nēquior*, more wicked; *nēquissimus*, most wicked.

*Dives*, rich; *divitior*, or *ditior*, more rich; *divitissimus*, or *ditissimus*, most rich.

*Extērus*, outward; *extērior*, more outward; *extrēmus*, and *extimus*, uttermost, or most outward.

*Infērus*, low; *infērior*, lower, or more low; *infimus*, and *imus*, lowest, or most low.

*Sūpērus*, high; *sūpērior*, higher, or more high; *suprēmus*, or *summus*, highest, or most high.

*Postērus*, subsequent; *postērior*, later; *postrēmus*, last.

*Dexter*, on the right hand; *dextērior*, *dextimus*, both in nearly the same sense as the positive.

*Jūvēnis*, young; *jūnior*, younger, or more young.

*Sēnex*, old; *sēnior*, older, or more old.

Adjectives in *-dīcus*, *-fīcus*, *-vōlus*, derived from the verbs *dico*, *facio*, *volo*, form their comparisons in *-entior* and *-entissimus*, as if from the present participle of these verbs; as,

*Maledicus*, inclined to speak ill, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.

*Beneficus*, inclined to do good, *beneficentior*, *beneficentissimus*.

*Benevolus*, wishing well, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*.

Some adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees are formed from prepositions; as, from

*Intra*, within; *intērior*, inner; *intimus*, inmost.

*Ultra*, beyond; *ultērior*, further; *ultimus*, furthest, last.

*Citra*, on this side; *citērior*, nearer; *citimus*, nearest.

*Prope*, near; *prōpior*, nearer; *proximus*, nearest.

*Præ*, before; *prīor*, before; *prīmus*, first.

And some have no positive at all to which we can refer them; as,

*dētērior*, worse; *dēterrimus*, worst.

*ōcyor*, swifter; *ōcyssimus*, swiftest.

*pōtior*, more desirable; *pōtissimus*, most desirable.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rimus*; as, of *pulcher* fair, *pulcher-rimus* fairest, or, most fair.

So too *vētus*, making in the gen. *vētēris*, though it has no comparative, makes in the superlative *vēterrimus*.

The following adjectives in *lis* change *is* into *līmus* :

|                    |           |                       |             |                   |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>Agil-is</i> ,   | nimble ;  | <i>āgil-līmus</i> ,   | nimblest,   | or, most nimble.  |
| <i>Fācil-is</i> ,  | easy ;    | <i>fācil-līmus</i> ,  | easiest,    | or, most easy.    |
| <i>Grācil-is</i> , | slender ; | <i>grācil-līmus</i> , | slenderest, | or, most slender. |
| <i>Hūmil-is</i> ,  | low ;     | <i>hūmil-līmus</i> ,  | lowest,     | or, most low.     |
| <i>Simil-is</i> ,  | like ;    | <i>simil-līmus</i> ,  | likest,     | or, most like.    |

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is usually made by *māgis* more, and *maximè* most ; as,

*Pius*, godly ; *māgis pius*, more godly ; *maximè pius*, most godly.\*

## OF A PRONOUN.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a substantive, and is either itself a substantive, and called a *personal pronoun* ; or an adjective, being either a *demonstrative*, or *relative*, or *interrogative* pronoun. There are also *possessive* pronouns, which are adjectives derived from the genitive cases of the personal pronouns.

The pronouns are :

|               |                                                     |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Egō</i> ,  | I,                                                  | } The personal<br>pronouns :       | <i>meus</i> ,               | mine,                                             | } Possessive<br>pronouns. |
| <i>tu</i> ,   | you,                                                |                                    | <i>tuus</i> ,               | your,                                             |                           |
| <i>sui</i> ,  | of himself,                                         |                                    | <i>suus</i> ,               | his own,                                          |                           |
|               |                                                     |                                    | <i>noster</i> ,             | ours,                                             |                           |
|               |                                                     | <i>vester</i> ,                    | yours, of <i>ye</i> ,       |                                                   |                           |
| <i>hic</i> ,  | this,                                               | } Demon-<br>strative<br>pronouns : | <i>qui</i> ,                | who, the relative pro-<br>noun, and its compounds |                           |
| <i>is</i> ,   | he,                                                 |                                    | <i>quicumque</i> ,          | <i>quisquis</i> , etc.                            |                           |
| <i>ille</i> , | he,                                                 |                                    | <i>qui</i> or <i>quis</i> , | who? the in-<br>terrogative pronoun.              |                           |
| <i>ipse</i> , | oneself,                                            |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |
| <i>idem</i> , | (which is a<br>compound of<br><i>is</i> ) the same, |                                    |                             |                                                   |                           |

The syllable *met*, giving additional emphasis to the pronoun, is often added to *egō*, in all cases except the genitive, and to some of the cases of *tu* and of *sui* ; but to the nominative of *tu*, *met* is not added, but *te*, as nom. *tūtē*, acc. *tūtēmet*. The accusative and ablative cases of *sui* admit of a reduplication, as *sēsē*.

\* Juvenal uses *egregiūs* as the comparative of the adverb *egregiè*, and *pūssimus* occurs in Seneca ; but these examples are not to be imitated.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

*Ego, tu, sui*, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i> |                         | <i>Plural.</i> |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| N. Ego,          | <i>I,</i>               | N. Nos,        | <i>we,</i>              |
| G. Mei,          | <i>of me,</i>           | G. Nostr-um,   | <i>vel -i, of us,</i>   |
| D. Mihi,*        | <i>to me,</i>           | D. Nōbis,      | <i>to us,</i>           |
| A. Me,           | <i>me,</i>              | A. Nos,        | <i>us,</i>              |
| V. —             |                         | V. —           |                         |
| A. Me,           | <i>from, or, by me.</i> | A. Nōbis,      | <i>from, or, by us.</i> |

| <i>Singular.</i> |                            | <i>Plural.</i> |                           |
|------------------|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| N. Tu,           | <i>thou, or, you,</i>      | N. Vos,        | <i>ye, or, you, [you,</i> |
| G. Tui,          | <i>of thee, or, you,</i>   | G. Vestr-um,   | <i>vel -i, of ye, or,</i> |
| D. Tibi,         | <i>to thee, or, you,</i>   | D. Vōbis,      | <i>to ye, or, you,</i>    |
| A. Te,           | <i>thee, or, you,</i>      | A. Vos,        | <i>ye, or, you,</i>       |
| V. Tu,           | <i>o thou, or, you,</i>    | V. Vos,        | <i>o ye,</i>              |
| A. Te,           | <i>with thee, or, you.</i> | A. Vōbis,      | <i>with ye, or, you.</i>  |

*Sui*, † of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined :

*Singular and Plural.*

|          |                    |                                       |
|----------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| G. Sui,  | <i>of himself,</i> | } <i>herself, themselves, &amp;c.</i> |
| D. Sibi, | <i>to himself,</i> |                                       |
| A. Se,   | <i>himself,</i>    |                                       |
| A. Se,   | <i>by himself,</i> |                                       |

| <i>Singular.</i> |              |             | <i>Plural.</i> |               |               |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| M.               | F.           | N.          | M.             | F.            | N.            |
| N. Hic, ‡        | <i>hæc,</i>  | <i>hoc,</i> | N. Hi,         | <i>hæ,</i>    | <i>hæc,</i>   |
| G. Hujus,        |              |             | G. Hōrum,      | <i>hārum,</i> | <i>hōrum,</i> |
| D. Huic,         |              |             | D. His,        |               |               |
| A. Hunc,         | <i>hanc,</i> | <i>hoc,</i> | A. Hos,        | <i>has,</i>   | <i>hæc,</i>   |
| V. —             |              |             | V. —           |               |               |
| A. Hôc,          | <i>hâc,</i>  | <i>hôc.</i> | A. His.        |               |               |

\* In poetry often contracted into *mî*.

† *Sui* and its possessive *suus* are called *reflective* pronouns, because they refer to that person or thing which is the principal word in the sentence.

‡ To *hic* is often added *ce*, giving additional emphasis in all cases and genders; and in interrogative sentences, sometimes *cine* is added; as, *hujusce, huncce, hosce*, etc.

*Ille* he, fem. *illa* she, neut. *illud* that, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i>    |                 |                 | <i>Plural.</i>       |                   |                   |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| M.                  | F.              | N.              | N.                   | F.                | N.                |
| N. <i>Ille</i> ,    | <i>ill-a</i> ,  | <i>ill-ud</i> , | N. <i>Ill-i</i> ,    | <i>ill-æ</i> ,    | <i>ill-a</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Ill-ius</i> , |                 |                 | G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> , | <i>ill-ārum</i> , | <i>ill-ōrum</i> , |
| D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,   |                 |                 | D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,   |                   |                   |
| A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,  | <i>ill-am</i> , | <i>ill-ud</i> , | A. <i>Ill-os</i> ,   | <i>ill-as</i> ,   | <i>ill-a</i> ,    |
| V. —                |                 |                 | V. —                 |                   |                   |
| A. <i>Ill-o</i> ,   | <i>ill-â</i> ,  | <i>ill-o</i> .  | A. <i>Ill-is</i> .   |                   |                   |

In like manner is also declined *iste* that, and *ipse* he himself ; except that this last makes *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative cases singular of the neuter gender.

*Is*, *ea*, *id*, he, she, or that, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i> |              |             | <i>Plural.</i>               |                |                |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| M.               | F.           | N.          | M.                           | F.             | N.             |
| N. <i>Is</i> ,   | <i>ea</i> ,  | <i>id</i> , | N. <i>Ii</i> ,               | <i>eæ</i> ,    | <i>ea</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Ejus</i> , |              |             | G. <i>Eōrum</i> ,            | <i>eārum</i> , | <i>eōrum</i> , |
| D. <i>Ei</i> ,   |              |             | D. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> , | <i>eis</i> ,   |                |
| A. <i>Eum</i> ,  | <i>eam</i> , | <i>id</i> , | A. <i>Eos</i> ,              | <i>eas</i> ,   | <i>ea</i> ,    |
| V. —             |              |             | V. —                         |                |                |
| A. <i>Eo</i> ,   | <i>eâ</i> ,  | <i>eo</i> . | A. <i>Iis</i> , <i>vel</i> , | <i>eis</i> .   |                |

In like manner also is declined its compound, *idem* the same ; as, nom. *īdem*, *eādem*, *īdem* ; gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

The relative *qui*, who, is thus declined :

| <i>Singular.</i>  |               |               | <i>Plural.</i>      |                 |                 |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M.                | F.            | N.            | M.                  | F.              | N.              |
| N. <i>Qui</i> ,   | <i>quæ</i> ,  | <i>quod</i> , | N. <i>Qui</i> ,     | <i>quæ</i> ,    | <i>quæ</i> ,    |
| G. <i>Cujus</i> , |               |               | G. <i>Quorum</i> ,  | <i>quarum</i> , | <i>quorum</i> , |
| D. <i>Cui</i> ,   |               |               | D. <i>Quībus</i> ,* |                 |                 |
| A. <i>Quem</i> ,  | <i>quam</i> , | <i>quod</i> , | A. <i>Quos</i> ,    | <i>quas</i> ,   | <i>quæ</i> ,    |
| V. —              |               |               | V. —                |                 |                 |
| A. <i>Quo</i> ,   | <i>quâ</i> ,  | <i>quo</i> .  | A. <i>Quībus</i> .  |                 |                 |

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quivis*, *quīlibet*, any one ; *quicumque*, whosoever, &c. &c.

\* *Quībus* is often contracted into *queis*, or *quīs*, in poetry, and in some (but not in the purest) prose writers.

The *indefinite* pronoun *quis*, any one, (not found except after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto*, or *quum*,) is declined like *qui*, except that in the nom. sing. fem. and also in the nom. and acc. pl. neut. it makes both *quæ* and (more usually) *quã*; and in the nom. and acc. neut. sing. it makes *quid*.

The *interrogative* pronoun, when joined with a substantive, is *qui*?\* when standing without a substantive, the nom. sing. masc. is *quis*? and in the nom. and acc. sing. neut. *quid*?

*Quisquis*, whosoever, is confined to the following cases :

|      |                       |                        |
|------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. | Quisquis, ———         | quidquid, or quicquid, |
| Acc. | —————                 | quidquid, or quicquid, |
| Abl. | M. Quoquo, N. quoquo. |                        |

## OF A VERB.

A **VERB** is that part of speech by which it is declared that the subject of a sentence *does* or *suffers* something.

Verbs have two voices; the *active*, ending in *o*; the *passive*, ending in *or*.

Of verbs ending in *o* some are *transitive*, that is to say, in them the action passes on to a noun following; as, *amo te*, "I love you." And these verbs have a passive voice, which is made by changing *o* into *or*; as, *amor*, "I am loved."

Some are *intransitive*, that is to say, the action expressed by them does not pass on to any noun following, but is complete in itself; as, *curro*, "I run:" and these verbs have no passive voice.†

Three verbs, *fïo*, "I become;" *vãpũlo*, "I am beaten;" *vẽneo*, "I am sold," have a passive signification, but an active form (except that *fïo* makes *factus sum* in the perfect;) and are called *neutral passives*.

\* There are a few instances of *quis* also being used with a substantive, but, except in poetry, it is seldom done, except to avoid an open vowel.

† But, from these verbs, impersonal verbs are often formed of the third singular passive; as, *vivũtur*, "it is lived by men," that is to say, "men live, one lives," &c.; *ĩtur*, "men go, one goes," &c.; *ventum est*, "I, or you, or he came," &c.



Four verbs, *audeo*, "I dare;" *fīdo*, "I trust;" *gaudeo*, "I am glad;" and *sōleo*, "I am accustomed," have the passive form with an active signification in the participle of the perfect tense, and in the tenses formed from it; as, *ausus sum*, &c. and these are called *neuter passives*.

Of verbs ending in *or* some are *passive*, as has been said above, and some are *deponent* verbs, being of a passive form (with the addition of gerunds and supines,) but of an active signification; some being *transitive*; as, *vēnēror Deum*, "I worship God;" and some *intransitive*; as, *mōrior*, "I die."

Some verbs are used only in the third person singular, having no nominative case; as, *tōnat*, "it thunders;" *ōportet me*, "it behoves me;" and these are called verbs *impersonal*.

#### OF MOODS.

There are four moods, the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The *indicative* mood either declares a thing positively; as, *ego amo*, "I do love;" or asks a question; as, *amas tu*, "dost thou love?"

The *imperative* mood expresses a command, a request, a wish, or an exhortation; as, *vēni huc*, "come hither;" *parce mihi*, "spare me." It is also known by the sign *let*; as, *īto*, "let him go."\*

The *subjunctive* or *potential* mood speaks of the subject as it is conceived in the mind; and is called *subjunctive*, when it is subjoined to another word or clause going before it; as, *nescio qualis sit*, "I know not what sort of man he is." It is called *potential*, when it signifies *power*, *duty*, *likelihood*, *inclination*, or *wish*; and in the second and third persons of the present and perfect it is sometimes used nearly in the sense of the impera-

---

\* In grammars the imperative is usually given as consisting but of one tense; but the forms in *to* (active) and in *tor* (passive) have a more future sense than the other forms.

tive; as, *sis bõnus*, “may you be propitious;” *ãmet*, “let him love.”

The *infinitive* mood has neither number, person, or nominative case before it; and is known commonly by the sign *to*; as, *amãre*, “to love.” It is also often used as a nominative or accusative case neuter; as, *errãre humãnum est*, “to err is human.”

#### OF TENSES.

Verbs have six tenses or times, expressing the time of an action; the present, the imperfect, the perfect, the pluperfect, and the first future, and second future, or future perfect.

The *present* tense speaks of a thing now existing, or now doing; as, *ãmo*, “I love;” *løquor*, “I am speaking;” *sum*, “I am.”

The *imperfect* tense speaks of a thing that was being done, but was not terminated, at some particular past time; as, *ãmãbam*, “I was loving.” And sometimes it expresses a habit; as, *dĩcẽbam*, “I used to say.” And is formed by changing—

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>-ãbam</i> ,  |
| In the second            | <i>o</i> into <i>-bam</i> ,   |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>-ẽbam</i> .* |

The *perfect* tense speaks of an action terminated; as, *ãmãvi*, “I loved,” or “have loved,” and is formed as will be shewn in the *As in prãsentĩ*.

The *pluperfect* speaks of a thing done at some time past, and then ended; as, *ãmãvẽram*, “I had loved;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ẽram*.

The *first future* tense speaks of a thing to be done hereafter; as, *ãmãbo*, “I shall love;” and is formed from the present by changing—

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>ãbo</i> , |
| In the second            | <i>o</i> into <i>bo</i> ,  |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>am</i> .  |

\* The Poets often make the imperfect of the fourth conjugation in *bam*, instead of *-iebam*; as, “*Lenibat dictis animum.*” Virg.

The *second future*, or *future perfect*, speaks of a thing which will have been done when something else has been done ; as, *āmāvĕro*, “I shall have loved ;” and is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ĕro*.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three *gerunds*, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which supply the oblique cases of the infinitive present active as, *āmandi*, “of loving ;” *āmandum*, “loving ;” *āmando*, “by loving,” &c. ; and they are formed from the present by changing—

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| In the first conjugation | <i>o</i> into <i>andi</i> ,  |
| In the second            | <i>eo</i> into <i>endi</i> , |
| In the third and fourth  | <i>o</i> into <i>endi</i> .  |

They have two *supines*, which are also used to supply cases for the infinitive and are formed, as will be taught in the *As in præsenti*.

The supine in *um* is used only with verbs expressing or implying a motion to a place ; as, *eo dormītum*, “I go to sleep.”

The supine in *u* has a passive sense, and is used only after adjectives, or after one or two substantives used as adjectives ; as, *turpe factu*, “base to be done ;” *nĕfas dictu*, “wicked to be said.” But there are many verbs which have no supine.

#### PARTICIPLES.

THERE are four participles ; two active, and two passive :—

The participle of the present active, which signifies a present action, and ends in *ans* in the first conjugation, and in *ens* in the others ; as, *āmans*, “loving ;” *mōnens*, “warning.”

The participle future active ending in *ūrus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing anything ; as, *āmātūrus*, “about to love,” or “likely to love.”

The participle perfect passive, which signifies what is actually done and completed ; as, *āmātus*, “loved ;” *mōnītus*, “having been warned.” But in deponent verbs this participle has commonly an active signification ; as, *lōcūtus hęc*, “having spoken these things.”

Another participle passive, called also the *gerundive*, which denotes that what is spoken of must happen, ought to happen, or (sometimes) is actually happening, with respect to a person or thing ; as, *āmāndus*, “who must, or ought to be loved ;” *in ěpistolā scribendā*, “in writing the letter.”

#### OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like nouns ; and three persons in each number.

| <i>Singular.</i> |                  | <i>Plural.</i> |                   |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. Ego amo,      | <i>I love.</i>   | Nos amāmus,    | <i>We love.</i>   |
| 2. Tu amas,      | <i>you love.</i> | Vos amātis,    | <i>ye love.</i>   |
| 3. Ille amat,    | <i>he loves.</i> | Illi amant,    | <i>they love.</i> |

All nouns, except *ego* and *tu*, are of the third person.

---

#### OF THE VERB *Esse*, to be.

*Before other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.*

*Sum, es, fui, esse, fūtūrus*, to be.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. Present Tense.—*am.*

|            |                 |              |                  |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| Sing. Sum, | <i>I am.</i>    | Plur. Sūmus, | <i>We are.</i>   |
| Ĕs,        | <i>you are.</i> | Estis,       | <i>ye are.</i>   |
| Est,       | <i>he is.</i>   | Sunt,        | <i>they are.</i> |

##### 2. Imperfect Tense.—*was.*

|             |                  |               |                   |
|-------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Sing. Ĕram, | <i>I was.</i>    | Plur. Ĕrāmus, | <i>We were.</i>   |
| Ĕras,       | <i>you were.</i> | Ĕrātis,       | <i>ye were.</i>   |
| Ĕrat,       | <i>he was.</i>   | Ĕrant,        | <i>they were.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Fui,                 | <i>I have been.</i>    |
| Fuisti,                    | <i>you have been.</i>  |
| Fuit,                      | <i>he has been.</i>    |
| Plur. Fuimus,              | <i>We have been.</i>   |
| Fuistis,                   | <i>ye have been.</i>   |
| Fuērunt, <i>vel</i> fuēre, | <i>they have been.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Fueram,   | <i>I had been.</i>    |
| Fuēras,         | <i>you had been.</i>  |
| Fuērat,         | <i>he had been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuērāmus, | <i>We had been.</i>   |
| Fuērātis,       | <i>ye had been.</i>   |
| Fuērant,        | <i>they had been.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Sing. Ęro,    | <i>I shall be.</i>   |
| Ęris,         | <i>you will be.</i>  |
| Ęrit,         | <i>he will be.</i>   |
| Plur. Ęrīmus, | <i>We shall be.</i>  |
| Ęrītis,       | <i>ye will be.</i>   |
| Ęrunt,        | <i>they will be.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have*

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Fuěro,    | <i>I shall have been.</i>   |
| Fuěris,         | <i>you will have been.</i>  |
| Fuěrit,         | <i>he will have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuěrīmus, | <i>We shall have been.</i>  |
| Fuěrītis,       | <i>ye will have been.</i>   |
| Fuěrint,        | <i>they will have been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sing. Es, esto,     | <i>Be thou.</i>                  |
| Esto,               | <i>be he, or, let him be.</i>    |
| Plur. Este, estōte, | <i>Be ye.</i>                    |
| Sunto,              | <i>be they, or, let them be.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|            |                    |              |                     |
|------------|--------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Sim, | <i>I may be.</i>   | Plur. Sīmus, | <i>We may be.</i>   |
| Sis,       | <i>you may be.</i> | Sītis,       | <i>ye may be.</i>   |
| Sit,       | <i>he may be.</i>  | Sint,        | <i>they may be.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, &c.*

|                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Essem, <i>vel, förem,</i>     | <i>I might be.</i>    |
| Esses, <i>vel, föres,</i>           | <i>you might be.</i>  |
| Esset, <i>vel, föret,</i>           | <i>he might be.</i>   |
| Plur. Essēmus, <i>vel, förēmus,</i> | <i>We might be.</i>   |
| Essētis, <i>vel, förētis,</i>       | <i>ye might be.</i>   |
| Essent, <i>vel, förent,</i>         | <i>they might be.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have, &c.*

|                 |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. Fuërim,   | <i>I may have been.</i>    |
| Fuëris,         | <i>you may have been.</i>  |
| Fuërit,         | <i>he may have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuërimus, | <i>We may have been.</i>   |
| Fuëritis,       | <i>ye may have been.</i>   |
| Fuërint,        | <i>they may have been.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

|                  |                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Fuissem,   | <i>I might, or, would have been.</i>    |
| Fuisses,         | <i>you might, or, would have been.</i>  |
| Fuisset,         | <i>he might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Plur. Fuissēmus, | <i>We might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Fuissētis,       | <i>ye might, or, would have been.</i>   |
| Fuissent,        | <i>they might, or, would have been.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about, &c.*

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. Fütūrus sim,* | <i>I may be about to be.</i>    |
| Fütūrus sis,        | <i>you may be about to be.</i>  |
| Fütūrus sit,        | <i>he may be about to be.</i>   |
| Plur. Fütūri sīmus, | <i>We may be about to be.</i>   |
| Fütūri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to be.</i>   |
| Fütūri sint,        | <i>they may be about to be.</i> |

---

\* *Fütūrus*, being in reality a participle, agrees with its substantive

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense,

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense,

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future Tense,

Före, *vel*, Fütūrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Participle future,\*

Fütūrus, *about to be.*

## DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation has *ā* in the penultima (or last syllable but one) of the infinitive mood active; as, *āmō, amāre*.†

The second has *ē*; as, *mōnĕo, mōnĕre*.

The third has *ĕ*; as, *rĕgo, rĕgere*.

The fourth has *ī*; as, *audīo, audīre*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are declined after these examples.

1. Am-o, am-as, am-āvi, am-āre; aman-di, aman-do, aman-dum; amāt-um, amāt-u; am-ans, amātu-rus:  
*to love.*

---

in gender and number; so that in the singular it may be either *futurus*, *futura*, or *futurum*; in the plural, *futuri*, *-æ*, or *-a*.

\* Some compounds of *sum* have also a present participle; as, *absum* to be absent, part. *absens*, absent, or being absent.

† Except *do*, "to give;" which makes *dāre, dātum*.

2. Mōn-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ēre ; monen-di, monen-do, monen-dum ; monīt-um, monīt-u ; mon-ens, monītū-rus : *to advise.*

3. Rēg-o,\* reg-is, rex-i, reg-ēre ; regen-di, regen-do, regen-dum ; rect-um, rect-u ; reg-ens, rectu-rus : *to rule.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-īvi, aud-īre ; audien-di, audien-do, audien-dum ; audit-um, audit-u ; audi-ens, auditu-rus : *to hear.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                |                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-o,    | <i>I love, am loving, or, do love.</i>     |
| ām-as,         | <i>you love, are loving, or, do love.</i>  |
| ām-at,         | <i>he loves, is loving, or, does love.</i> |
| Plur. Ām-āmus, | <i>We love, are loving, or, do love.</i>   |
| ām-ātis,       | <i>ye love, are loving, or, do love.</i>   |
| ām-ant,        | <i>they love, are loving, or, do love.</i> |

#### 2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                  |                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-ābam,   | <i>I did love, or, was loving.</i>     |
| am-ābas,         | <i>you did love, or, were loving.</i>  |
| am-ābat,         | <i>he did love, or, was loving.</i>    |
| Plur. Am-ābāmus, | <i>We did love, or, were loving.</i>   |
| am-ābātis,       | <i>ye did love, or, were loving.</i>   |
| am-ābant,        | <i>they did love, or, were loving.</i> |

#### 3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-i,               | <i>I loved, or, have loved.</i>    |
| amāv-isti,                  | <i>you loved, or, have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-it,                    | <i>he loved, or, has loved.</i>    |
| Plur. Amāv-īmus,            | <i>We loved, or, have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-istis,                 | <i>ye loved, or, have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ērunt, <i>vel-ēre,</i> | <i>they loved, or, have loved.</i> |

---

\* The following is the way in which a Verb of the third Conjugation ending in *-io* is declined :—Fūg-io, fug-is, fūg-i, fug-ērē ; fugien-di, fugien-do, fugien-dum ; fugīt-um, fugīt-u ; fugi-ens, fugītu-rus.



4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had*.

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-eram,   | <i>I had loved.</i>    |
| amāv-eras,         | <i>you had loved.</i>  |
| amāv-erat,         | <i>he had loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāv-ērāmus, | <i>We had loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ērātis,       | <i>ye had loved.</i>   |
| amāv-érant,        | <i>they had loved.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will*.

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Ām-ābo,    | <i>I shall love.</i>   |
| am-ābis,         | <i>you will love.</i>  |
| am-ābit,         | <i>he will love.</i>   |
| Plur. Am-ābīmus, | <i>We shall love.</i>  |
| am-ābītis,       | <i>ye will love.</i>   |
| am-ābunt,        | <i>they will love.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have*.

|                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Āmāv-ēro,    | <i>I shall have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ēris,         | <i>you will have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-ērit,         | <i>he will have loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāv-ērīmus, | <i>We shall have loved.</i>  |
| amāv-ērītis,       | <i>ye will have loved.</i>   |
| amāv-ērīnt,        | <i>they will have loved.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Ām-a, ām-āto,     | <i>Love thou.</i>     |
| am-āto,                 | <i>let him love.</i>  |
| Plur. Am-āte, am-ātōte, | <i>Love ye.</i>       |
| am-anto,                | <i>let them love.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| Sing. Ām-em,   | <i>I may love.</i>    |
| am-es,         | <i>you may love.</i>  |
| am-et,         | <i>he may love.</i>   |
| Plur. Am-ēmus, | <i>We may love.</i>   |
| am-ētis,       | <i>ye may love.</i>   |
| am-ent,        | <i>they may love.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should, would.*

|       |                                       |                                                               |
|-------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Ām-ārem,<br>am-āres,<br>am-āret,      | <i>I might love.<br/>you might love.<br/>he might love.</i>   |
| Plur. | Am-ārēmus,<br>am-ārētis,<br>am-ārent, | <i>We might love.<br/>ye might love.<br/>they might love.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have.*

|       |                                             |                                                                           |
|-------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Āmāv-ĕrim,<br>amāv-ĕris,<br>amāv-ĕrit,      | <i>I may have loved.<br/>you may have loved.<br/>he may have loved.</i>   |
| Plur. | Amāv-ĕrimus,<br>amāv-ĕritis,<br>amāv-ĕrint, | <i>We may have loved.<br/>ye may have loved.<br/>they may have loved.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have.*

|       |                                                |                                                                                 |
|-------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Āmāv-isseṃ,<br>amāv-isses,<br>amāv-isset,      | <i>I would have loved.<br/>you would have loved.<br/>he would have loved.</i>   |
| Plur. | Amāv-issēmus,<br>amāv-issētis,<br>amāv-issent, | <i>We would have loved.<br/>ye would have loved.<br/>they would have loved.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

|       |                                                      |                                                                                             |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. | Āmātū-rus sim,<br>amatu-rus sis,<br>amatu-rus sit,   | <i>I may be about to love.<br/>you may be about to love.<br/>he may be about to love.</i>   |
| Plur. | Amatu-ri simus,<br>amatu-ri sitis,<br>amatu-ri sint, | <i>We may be about to love.<br/>ye may be about to love.<br/>they may be about to love.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Āmā-re,            *to love.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Āmāv-isse,        *to have loved.*

## Future Tense.

Ămătū-rum esse, *or, fōre, to be about to love.*

## GERUNDS.

|           |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|
| Ăman-di,  | <i>of loving.</i> |
| Aman-do,  | <i>in loving.</i> |
| Aman-dum, | <i>to love.</i>   |

## SUPINES.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Active,                  | Passive,                    |
| Ămăt-um, <i>to love.</i> | Ămăt-u, <i>to be loved.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Present Tense,         | Future,                          |
| Ăm-ans, <i>loving.</i> | Ămătū-rus, <i>about to love.</i> |

SECOND CONJUGATION.—*Moneo.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                 |                                                  |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mōn-eo,   | <i>I advise, am advising, or, do advise.</i>     |
| mōn-es,         | <i>you advise, are advising or, do advise.</i>   |
| mōn-et,         | <i>he advises, is advising, or, does advise.</i> |
| Plur. Mōn-ēmus, | <i>We advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>   |
| mōn-ētis,       | <i>ye advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i>   |
| mōn-ent,        | <i>they advise, are advising, or, do advise.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                   |                                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mōn-ēbam,   | <i>I did advise, or, was advising.</i>     |
| mōn-ēbas,         | <i>you did advise, or, were advising.</i>  |
| mōn-ēbat,         | <i>he did advise, or, was advising.</i>    |
| Plur. Mōn-ēbāmus, | <i>We did advise, or, were advising.</i>   |
| mōn-ēbātis,       | <i>ye did advise, or, were advising.</i>   |
| mōn-ēbant,        | <i>they did advise, or, were advising.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have*.

|                      |                                        |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnu-i,        | <i>I advised, or, have advised.</i>    |
| mõnu-isti,           | <i>you advised, or, have advised.</i>  |
| mõnu-it,             | <i>he advised, or, has advised.</i>    |
| Plur. Mõnu-ïmus,     | <i>We advised, or, have advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-istis,          | <i>ye advised, or, have advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ërunt, v. -ëre, | <i>they advised, or, have advised.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had*.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnu-ëram,   | <i>I had advised.</i>    |
| mõnu-ëras,         | <i>you had advised.</i>  |
| mõnu-ërat,         | <i>he had advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Mõnu-ëramus, | <i>We had advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ëratïtis,     | <i>ye had advised.</i>   |
| mõnu-ërant,        | <i>they had advised.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will*.

|                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Mõnë-bo,    | <i>I shall advise.</i>            |
| mõnë-bis,         | <i>you will advise.</i>           |
| mõnë-bit,         | <i>he will advise.</i>            |
| Plur. Mõnë-bïmus, | <i>We shall, or, will advise.</i> |
| mõnë-bïtis,       | <i>ye will advise.</i>            |
| mõnë-bunt,        | <i>they will advise.</i>          |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have, will have*.

|                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-ëro,    | <i>I shall have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ëris,         | <i>you will have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ërit,         | <i>he will have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-ërimus, | <i>We shall have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ëritïtis,     | <i>ye will have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ërint,        | <i>they will have advised.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Mõn-e, mon-ëto,     | <i>Advise thou.</i>     |
| mon-ëto,                  | <i>let him advise.</i>  |
| Plur. Mon-ëte, mon-ëtöte, | <i>Advise ye.</i>       |
| mon-ento,                 | <i>let them advise.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Mone-am,   | <i>I may advise.</i>    |
| mone-as,         | <i>you may advise.</i>  |
| mone-at,         | <i>he may advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Mone-āmus, | <i>We may advise.</i>   |
| mone-ātis,       | <i>ye may advise.</i>   |
| mone-ant,        | <i>they may advise.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, would*.

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. Monē-rem,   | <i>I might advise.</i>    |
| monē-res,         | <i>you might advise.</i>  |
| monē-ret,         | <i>he might advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Monē-rēmus, | <i>We might advise.</i>   |
| monē-rētis,       | <i>ye might advise.</i>   |
| monē-rent,        | <i>they might advise.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-ërim,   | <i>I may have advised.</i>    |
| monu-ëris,         | <i>you may have advised.</i>  |
| monu-ërit,         | <i>he may have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-ërimus, | <i>We may have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ëritis,       | <i>ye may have advised.</i>   |
| monu-ërint,        | <i>they may have advised.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Sing. Monu-isse,    | <i>I would have advised.</i>    |
| monu-isses,         | <i>you would have advised.</i>  |
| monu-isset,         | <i>he would have advised.</i>   |
| Plur. Monu-issēmus, | <i>We would have advised.</i>   |
| monu-issētis,       | <i>ye would have advised.</i>   |
| monu-issent,        | <i>they would have advised.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to*.

|                        |                                     |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. Mōnitū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to advise.</i>    |
| monitu-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to advise.</i>  |
| monitu-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to advise.</i>   |
| Plur. Mōnitū-ri sīmus, | <i>We may be about to advise.</i>   |
| monitu-ri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to advise.</i>   |
| monitu-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to advise.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Mon-ēre, *to advise.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Monu-isse, *to have advised.*

## Future Tense.

Monītū-rum esse, *or fōre, to be about to advise.*

## GERUNDS.

|            |                     |
|------------|---------------------|
| Monen-di,  | <i>of advising.</i> |
| monen-do,  | <i>in advising.</i> |
| monen-dum, | <i>to advise.</i>   |

## SUPINES.

## Active.

Monīt-um, *to advise.*

## Passive.

Monīt-u, *to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## Present Tense.

Mon-ens, *advising.*

## Future.

Monītū-rus, *about to advise.*~~~~~  
THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rĕgo.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                 |                                            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-o,    | <i>I rule, am ruling, or, do rule.</i>     |
| rĕg-is,         | <i>you rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-it,         | <i>he rules, is ruling, or, does rule.</i> |
| Plur. Rĕg-īmas, | <i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>    |
| rĕg-ītis,       | <i>ye rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i>   |
| rĕg-unt,        | <i>they rule, are ruling, or, do rule.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                   |                                        |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕgĕ-bam,   | <i>I did rule, or, was ruling.</i>     |
| rĕgĕ-bas,         | <i>you did rule, or, were ruling.</i>  |
| rĕgĕ-bat,         | <i>he did rule, or, was ruling.</i>    |
| Plur. Rĕgĕ-bāmus, | <i>We did rule, or, were ruling.</i>   |
| rĕgĕ-bātis,       | <i>ye did rule, or, were ruling,</i>   |
| rĕgĕ-bant,        | <i>they did rule, or, were ruling.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                    |                                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-i,       | <i>I ruled, or, have ruled.</i>    |
| rex-isti,          | <i>you ruled, or, have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-it,            | <i>he ruled, or, has ruled.</i>    |
| Plur. Rex-īmus,    | <i>We ruled, or, have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-istis,         | <i>ye ruled, or, have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ērunt, v. ēre, | <i>they ruled, or, have ruled.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕram,   | <i>I had ruled.</i>    |
| rex-ĕras,         | <i>you had ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrat,         | <i>he had ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrāmus, | <i>We had ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrātis,       | <i>ye had ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrant,        | <i>they had ruled.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-am,   | <i>I shall rule.</i>   |
| rĕg-es,         | <i>you will rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-et,         | <i>he will rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-ēmus, | <i>We shall rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-ētis,       | <i>ye shall rule.</i>  |
| rĕg-ent,        | <i>they will rule.</i> |

6. Second Future, or, Future Perfect Tense —*shall have, will have.*

|                   |                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕro,    | <i>I shall have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕris,         | <i>you will have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrit,         | <i>he will have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrīmus, | <i>We shall have ruled.</i>  |
| rex-ĕrītis,       | <i>ye will have ruled.</i>   |
| rex-ĕrint,        | <i>they will have ruled.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                                        |                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-e, reg-ĭto,<br>rĕg-ĭto,      | <i>Rule thou.<br/>let him rule.</i> |
| Plur. Rĕg-ĭte, reg-ĭtote,<br>rĕg-unto, | <i>Rule ye.<br/>let them rule.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                                          |                                                         |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-am,<br>rĕg-as,<br>rĕg-at,      | <i>I may rule.<br/>you may rule.<br/>he may rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-āmus,<br>rĕg-ātis,<br>rĕg-ant, | <i>We may rule.<br/>ye may rule.<br/>they may rule.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

|                                                |                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rĕg-ĕrem,<br>rĕg-ĕres,<br>rĕg-ĕret,      | <i>I might rule.<br/>you might rule.<br/>he might rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rĕg-ĕrĕmus,<br>rĕg-ĕrĕtis,<br>rĕg-ĕrent, | <i>We might rule.<br/>ye might rule.<br/>they might rule.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

|                                                |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-ĕrim,<br>rex-ĕris,<br>rex-ĕrit,      | <i>I may have ruled.<br/>you may have ruled.<br/>he may have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-ĕrĭmus,<br>rex-ĕrĭtis,<br>rex-ĕrint, | <i>We may have ruled.<br/>ye may have ruled.<br/>they may have ruled.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

|                                                   |                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Rex-isse[m],<br>rex-isses,<br>rex-isset,    | <i>I would have ruled.<br/>you would have ruled.<br/>he would have ruled.</i>   |
| Plur. Rex-issĕmus,<br>rex-issĕtis,<br>rex-issent, | <i>We would have ruled.<br/>ye would have ruled.<br/>they would have ruled.</i> |



5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Rectū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to rule.</i>    |
| rectū-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to rule.</i>  |
| rectū-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to rule.</i>   |
| Plur. Rectū-ri sīmus, | <i>We may be about to rule.</i>   |
| rectū-ri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to rule.</i>   |
| rectū-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to rule.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Reg-ĕre, *to rule.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse, *to have ruled.*

## Future Tense.

Rectū-rum esse, or före, *to be about to rule.*

## GERUNDS.

|            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| Regen-di,  | <i>of ruling.</i> |
| regen-do,  | <i>in ruling.</i> |
| regen-dum, | <i>to rule.</i>   |

## SUPINES.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Active.                  | Passive.                    |
| Rect-um, <i>to rule.</i> | Rect-u, <i>to be ruled.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                         |                                  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Present Tense.          | Future.                          |
| Reg-ens, <i>ruling.</i> | Rectū-rus, <i>about to rule.</i> |

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

|                 |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Aud-io,   | <i>I hear, am hearing, or, do hear.</i>     |
| aud-is,         | <i>you hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>  |
| aud-it,         | <i>he hears, is hearing, or, does hear.</i> |
| Plur. Aud-īmus, | <i>We hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>   |
| aud-ītis,       | <i>ye hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i>   |
| aud-iunt,       | <i>they hear, are hearing, or, do hear.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

|                    |                                         |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audiē-bam,   | <i>I did hear, or, was hearing.</i>     |
| audiē-bas,         | <i>you did hear, or, were hearing.</i>  |
| audiē-bat,         | <i>he did hear, or, was hearing.</i>    |
| Plur. Audiē-bāmus, | <i>We did hear, or, were hearing.</i>   |
| audiē-bātis,       | <i>ye did hear, or, were hearing.</i>   |
| audiē-bant,        | <i>they did hear, or, were hearing.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*have.*

|                       |                                    |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-i,        | <i>I heard, or, have heard.</i>    |
| audīv-isti,           | <i>you heard, or, have heard.</i>  |
| audīv-it,             | <i>he heard, or, has heard.</i>    |
| Plur. Audīv-īmus,     | <i>We heard, or, have heard.</i>   |
| audīv-istis,          | <i>ye heard, or, have heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērunt, v. -ēre, | <i>they heard, or, have heard.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ēram,   | <i>I had heard.</i>    |
| audīv-ēras,         | <i>you had heard.</i>  |
| audīv-ērat,         | <i>he had heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ērāmus, | <i>We had heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērātis,       | <i>ye had heard.</i>   |
| audīv-ērant,        | <i>they had heard.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Audi-am,   | <i>I shall hear.</i>   |
| audi-es,         | <i>you will hear.</i>  |
| audi-et,         | <i>he will hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audi-ēmus, | <i>We shall hear.</i>  |
| audi-ētis,       | <i>ye will hear.</i>   |
| audi-ent,        | <i>they will hear.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have, will have.*

|                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ēro,    | <i>I shall have heard.</i>   |
| Audīv-ēris,         | <i>you will have heard.</i>  |
| Audīv-ērit,         | <i>he will have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ērīmus, | <i>We shall have heard.</i>  |
| Audīv-ērītis,       | <i>ye will have heard.</i>   |
| Audīv-ērint,        | <i>they will have heard.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                                         |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Sing. Aud-i, aud-īto,<br>aud-īto,       | <i>Hear thou,<br/>let him hear.</i> |
| Plur. Aud-īte, aud-ītōte,<br>aud-iunto, | <i>Hear ye.<br/>let them hear.</i>  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may*.

|                                             |                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audi-am,<br>audi-as,<br>audi-at,      | <i>I may hear.<br/>you may hear.<br/>he may hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audi-āmus,<br>audi-ātis,<br>audi-ant, | <i>We may hear.<br/>ye may hear.<br/>they may hear.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might*.

|                                                |                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audī-rem,<br>audī-res,<br>audī-ret,      | <i>I might hear.<br/>you might hear.<br/>he might hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audī-rēmus,<br>audī-rētis,<br>audī-rent, | <i>We might hear.<br/>ye might hear.<br/>they might hear.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have*.

|                                                      |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-ērim,<br>audīv-ēris,<br>audīv-ērit,      | <i>I may have heard.<br/>you may have heard.<br/>he may have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-ērīmus,<br>audīv-ērītis,<br>audīv-ērīnt, | <i>We may have heard.<br/>ye may have heard.<br/>they may have heard.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would have, might have, could have*.

|                                                         |                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sing. Audīv-isseṃ,<br>audīv-isses,<br>audīv-isset,      | <i>I would have heard.<br/>you would have heard.<br/>he would have heard.</i>   |
| Plur. Audīv-issēmus,<br>audīv-issētis,<br>audīv-issent, | <i>We would have heard.<br/>ye would have heard.<br/>they would have heard.</i> |

5. Future Tense.—*may be about to.*

|                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Audītū-rus sim,  | <i>I may be about to hear.</i>    |
| audītū-rus sis,        | <i>you may be about to hear.</i>  |
| audītū-rus sit,        | <i>he may be about to hear.</i>   |
| Plur. Audītū-ri simus, | <i>We may be about to hear.</i>   |
| audītū-ri sītis,       | <i>ye may be about to hear.</i>   |
| audītū-ri sint,        | <i>they may be about to hear.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Aud-īre,                      *to hear.*

## Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīv-isse,                      *to have heard.*

## Future Tense.

Audītū-rum esse, *or* fōre,                      *to be about to hear.*

## GERUNDS.

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Audien-di,  | <i>of hearing.</i> |
| audien-do,  | <i>in hearing.</i> |
| audien-dum, | <i>to hear.</i>    |

## SUPINES.

|                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| Active.                   | Passive.                     |
| Audīt-um, <i>to hear.</i> | Audīt-u, <i>to be heard.</i> |

## PARTICIPLES.

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Present Tense.            | Future.                           |
| Audi-ens, <i>hearing.</i> | Audītū-rus, <i>about to hear.</i> |



IMPERSONAL VERBS are conjugated thus :

Present.

|                  |                                         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Sing. Dēcet me,  | <i>It becomes me, or, I ought.</i>      |
| dēcet te,        | <i>it becomes you, or, you ought.</i>   |
| dēcet illum,     | <i>it becomes him, or, he ought.</i>    |
| Plur. Dēcet nos, | <i>It becomes us, or, we ought.</i>     |
| dēcet vos,       | <i>it becomes you, or, ye ought.</i>    |
| dēcet illos,     | <i>it becomes them, or, they ought.</i> |

Imperfect.

Dēcēbat me,  
dēcēbat te, &c.

Like the third sing. of *moneo* ; and so on, through all the tenses.

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined :

1. Ām-or, ām-āris *vel* am-āre, amāt-us sum *vel*\* fui ;  
am-āri ; amāt-us, aman-dus ; *to be loved.*
2. Mōn-ēor, mon-ēris *vel* mon-ēre, mōnīt-us sum *vel*  
fui ; mon-ēri ; monit-us, monén-dus ; *to be advised.*
3. Rēg-or, rēg-ēris *vel* reg-ēre, rect-us sum *vel* fui ;  
reg-i ; rectus, regén-dus ; *to be ruled.*
4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, audīt-us sum *vel* fui ;  
aud-īri ; audīt-us, audién-dus ; *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Sing. Āmor,        | <i>I am loved.</i>     |
| amāris, v. am-āre, | <i>you are loved.</i>  |
| am-ātur,           | <i>he is loved.</i>    |
| Plur. Am-āmur,     | <i>We are loved.</i>   |
| am-āmīni,          | <i>ye are loved.</i>   |
| am-antur,          | <i>they are loved.</i> |

*uv*\* There are, however, very few instances (if any) of such forms as *matus fui* being used, by good authors, as the perfect tense, and equivalent to *v oratus sum*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Sing. Am-ābar,        | <i>I was loved.</i>     |
| am-ābāris, v. -ābāre, | <i>you were loved.</i>  |
| am-ābātur,            | <i>he was loved.</i>    |
| Plur. Am-ābāmur,      | <i>We were loved.</i>   |
| am-ābāmini,           | <i>ye were loved.</i>   |
| am-ābantur,           | <i>they were loved.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. Amāt-us sum, vel fui,    | <i>I have been loved.</i>    |
| amāt-us es, v. fuisti,         | <i>you have been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-us est, v. fuit,          | <i>he has been loved.</i>    |
| Plur. Amāt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus, | <i>We have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i estis, v. fuistis,      | <i>ye have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. -ēre, | <i>they have been loved.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Amāt-us eram, v. fueram,    | <i>I had been loved.</i>    |
| amāt-us eras, v. fueras,          | <i>you had been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-us erat, v. fuerat,          | <i>he had been loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāt-i erāmus, v. fuerāmus, | <i>We had been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i erātis, v. fuerātis,       | <i>ye had been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i erant, v. fuerant,         | <i>they had been loved.</i> |

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Sing. Am-ābor,        | <i>I shall be loved.</i>   |
| am-ābēris, v. -ābēre, | <i>you will be loved.</i>  |
| am-ābitur,            | <i>he will be loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Am-ābīmur,      | <i>We shall be loved.</i>  |
| am-ābīmini,           | <i>ye will be loved.</i>   |
| am-ābuntur,           | <i>they will be loved.</i> |

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect.—*shall have been, will have been.*

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sing. Amāt-us ero, v. fuero,      | <i>I shall have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-us eris, v. fueris,          | <i>you will have been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-us erit, v. fuerit,          | <i>he will have been loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāt-i erīmus, v. fuerīmus, | <i>We shall have been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-i erītis, v. fuerītis,       | <i>ye will have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i erunt, v. fuerint,         | <i>they will have been loved.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. Am-āre, am-ātor,     | <i>Be thou loved.</i>     |
| am-ātor,                   | <i>let him be loved.</i>  |
| Plur. Am-āmīui, am-āmīnor, | <i>Be ye loved.</i>       |
| ām-antor,                  | <i>let them be loved.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Sing. Amer,         | <i>I may be loved.</i>    |
| am-ēris, v. am-ēre, | <i>you may be loved.</i>  |
| Plur. Am-ēmur,      | <i>We may be loved.</i>   |
| am-ēmīni,           | <i>ye may be loved.</i>   |
| am-entur,           | <i>they may be loved.</i> |

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

|                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Sing. Am-ārer,       | <i>I might be loved.</i>    |
| am-ārēris, v. ārēre, | <i>you might be loved.</i>  |
| am-ārētur,           | <i>he might be loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Am-ārēmur,     | <i>We might be loved.</i>   |
| am-ārēmini,          | <i>ye might be loved.</i>   |
| am-ētur,             | <i>he may be loved.</i>     |
| am-ārentur,          | <i>they might be loved.</i> |

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sing. Amāt-us sim, v. fuerim,    | <i>I may have been loved.</i>    |
| amāt-us sis, v. fueris,          | <i>you may have been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-us sit, v. fuerit,          | <i>he may have been loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāt-i simus, v. fuerimus, | <i>We may have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i sitis, v. fueritis,       | <i>ye may have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i sint, v. fuerint,         | <i>they may have been loved.</i> |

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Sing. Amāt-us essem, v. fuisssem,   | <i>I would have been loved.</i>    |
| amāt-us esses, v. fuisses,          | <i>you would have been loved.</i>  |
| amāt-us esset, v. fuisset,          | <i>he would have been loved.</i>   |
| Plur. Amāt-i essēmus, v. fuissēmus, | <i>We would have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i essētis, v. fuissētis,       | <i>ye would have been loved.</i>   |
| amāt-i essent, v. fuissent,         | <i>they would have been loved.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Am-āri, *to be loved.*

## Perfect. and Pluperfect Tense.

Amāt-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been loved.*

## Future Tense.

Amāt-um iri, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

Amāt-us, *loved, or, being loved.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Aman-dus, *to be loved.*

~~~~~  
 SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.  
 INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
	mon-ēris, <i>v.</i> -ēre,	<i>you are advised.</i>
	mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised.</i>
Plur.	Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
	mon-ēmīni,	<i>ye are advised.</i>
	mon-entur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Mon-ēbar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
	mon-ēbāris, <i>v.</i> -ēbāre,	<i>you were advised.</i>
	mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was advised.</i>
Plur.	Mon-ēbāmur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
	mon-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were advised.</i>
	mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were advised.</i>



3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Monĭt-us sum, <i>v. fui,</i>	<i>I have been advised.</i>
monĭt-us es, <i>v. fuisti,</i>	<i>you have been advised.</i>
monĭt-us est, <i>v. fuit,</i>	<i>he has been advised.</i>
Plur. Monĭt-i sumus, <i>v. fuĭmus,</i>	<i>We have been advised.</i>
monĭt-i estis, <i>v. fuistis,</i>	<i>ye have been advised.</i>
monĭt-i sunt, <i>fuērunt, v. fuēre,</i>	<i>they have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Monĭt-us ěram, <i>v. fuěram,</i>	<i>I had been advised.</i>
monĭt-us ěras, <i>v. fuěras,</i>	<i>you had been advised.</i>
monĭt-us ěrat, <i>v. fuěrat,</i>	<i>he had been advised.</i>
Plur. Monĭt-i ěrāmus, <i>v. fuěrāmus,</i>	<i>We had been advised.</i>
monĭt-i ěrātis, <i>v. fuěrātis,</i>	<i>ye had been advised.</i>
monĭt-i ěrant, <i>v. fuěrant,</i>	<i>they had been advised.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Mon-ĕbor,	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
mon-ĕberis, <i>v. ĕbĕre,</i>	<i>you will be advised.</i>
mon-ĕbitur,	<i>he will be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ĕbĭmur,	<i>We shall be advised.</i>
mon-ĕbĭmini,	<i>ye will be advised.</i>
mon-ĕbuntur,	<i>they will be advised.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Monĭt-us ěro, <i>v. fuěro,</i>	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
monĭt-us ěris, <i>v. fuěris,</i>	<i>you will have been advised.</i>
monĭt-us ěrit, <i>v. fuěrit,</i>	<i>he will have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monĭt-i ěrĭmus, <i>v. fuěrĭmus,</i>	<i>We shall have been advised.</i>
monĭt-i ěrĭtis, <i>v. fuěrĭtis,</i>	<i>ye will have been advised.</i>
monĭt-i ěrunt, <i>v. fuěrint,</i>	<i>they will have been advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Mon-ĕre, mon-ĕtor,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
mon-ĕtor,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ĕmini, mon-ĕminor,	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
mon-entor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may be advised.</i>
mon-eāris, v. mon-eāre,	<i>you may be advised.</i>
mon-eātur,	<i>he may be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eāmur,	<i>We may be advised.</i>
mon-eāmīni,	<i>ye may be advised.</i>
mon-eantur,	<i>they may be advised.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Mon-ērer,	<i>I might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēris, v. -ērēre,	<i>you might be advised.</i>
mon-ērētur,	<i>he might be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ērēmur,	<i>We might be advised.</i>
mon-ērēmīni,	<i>ye might be advised.</i>
mon-ērentur,	<i>they might be advised.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us sim, v. fuērim,	<i>I may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sis, v. fuēris,	<i>you may have been advised.</i>
monīt-us sit, v. fuērit,	<i>he may have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i sīmus, v. fuērīmus,	<i>We may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sītis, v. fuērītis,	<i>ye may have been advised.</i>
monīt-i sint, v. fuērīnt,	<i>they may have been advised.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Monīt-us essem, v. fuīsem,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esses, v. fuīses,	<i>you would have been advised.</i>
monīt-us esset, v. fuīset,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monīt-i essēmus, v. fuīssēmus,	<i>We would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essētis, v. fuīssētis,	<i>ye would have been advised.</i>
monīt-i essent, v. fuīssent,	<i>they would have been advised.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Mon-ēri,            *to be advised.*

## Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monit-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been advised.*

## Future Tense.

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

Monit-us, *advised, or, being advised.*

The Participle in *dus*, or the gerundive.

Monen-dus, *to be advised.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—Ręgor.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing.	Ręg-or,	<i>I am ruled.</i>
	reg-ęris, <i>v.</i> reg-ęre,	<i>you are ruled.</i>
	reg-itur,	<i>he is ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-įmur,	<i>We are ruled.</i>
	reg-įmini,	<i>ye are ruled.</i>
	reg-untur,	<i>they are ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing.	Reg-ębar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
	reg-ębāris, <i>v.</i> ębāre,	<i>you were ruled.</i>
	reg-ębātur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ębāmur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
	reg-ębāmini,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
	reg-ębantur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us sum, <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>you have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us est, <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he has been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i sūmus, <i>v.</i> fuīmus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i sunt, fuērunt, <i>v.</i> fuēre,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ěram, v. fuěram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
	rect-us ěras, v. fuěras,	<i>you had been ruled.</i>
	rect-us ěrat, v. fuěrat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i ěrāmus, v. fuěrāmus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
	rect-i ěrātis, v. fuěrātis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
	rect-i ěrant, v. fuěrant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
	reg-ěris, v. reg-ěre,	<i>you will be ruled.</i>
	reg-ětur,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ěmur,	<i>We shall be ruled.</i>
	reg-ěměni,	<i>ye will be ruled.</i>
	reg-ěntur,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing.	Rect-us ěro, v. fuěro,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us ěris, v. fuěris,	<i>you will have been ruled.</i>
	rect-us ěrit, v. fuěrit,	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>
Plur.	Rect-i ěrěmus, v. fuěrěmus,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i ěrětis, v. fuěrětis,	<i>ye will have been ruled.</i>
	rect-i ěrunt, v. fuěrint,	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Rěg-ěre, reg-ětor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
	reg-ětor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-ěměni, reg-ěměnor,	<i>Be ye ruled.</i>
	reg-ěntor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing.	Reg-ar,	<i>I may be ruled.</i>
	reg-āris, v. reg-āre,	<i>you may be ruled.</i>
	reg-ātur,	<i>he may be ruled.</i>
Plur.	Reg-āmur,	<i>We may be ruled.</i>
	reg-āměni,	<i>ye may be ruled.</i>
	reg-āntur,	<i>they may be ruled.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might, should be.*

Sing. Reg-ärer,	<i>I might be ruled.</i>
reg-äreris, v. reg-ärerē,	<i>you might be ruled.</i>
reg-äreretur,	<i>he might be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-äreremur,	<i>We might be ruled.</i>
reg-äreremini,	<i>ye might be ruled.</i>
reg-ärentur,	<i>they might be ruled.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sim, v. fuërim,	<i>I may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sis, v. fuëris,	<i>you may have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sit, v. fuërit,	<i>he may have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i simus, v. fuërimus,	<i>We may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sitis, v. fuëritis,	<i>ye may have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sint, v. fuërint,	<i>they may have been ruled.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would have been.*

Sing. Rect-us essem, v. fuisssem,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esses, v. fuisses,	<i>you would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esset, v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i essëmus, v. fuissëmus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essëtis, v. fuissëtis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essent, v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

## Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse, *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

## Future Tense.

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled, or, being ruled.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Regen-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.  
INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
aud-īris, v. aud-īre,	<i>you are heard.</i>
aud-ītur,	<i>he is heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-īmur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
aud-īmīni,	<i>ye are heard.</i>
aud-iuntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*was, was being.*

Sing. Aud-iēbar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
aud-iēbāris, v. aud-iēbāre,	<i>you were heard.</i>
aud-iēbātur,	<i>he was heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēbāmur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
aud-iēbāmīni,	<i>ye were heard.</i>
aud-iēbantur,	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*was, have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sum, v. fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
audīt-us es, v. fuisti,	<i>you have been heard.</i>
audīt-us est, v. fuit,	<i>he has been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sūmus, v. fuīmus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
audīt-i estis, v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ēram, v. fuēram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ēras, v. fuēras,	<i>you had been heard.</i>
audīt-us ērat, v. fuērat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ērāmus, v. fuērāmus,	<i>We had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērātis, v. fuērātis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
audīt-i ērant, v. fuērant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. First Future Tense.—*shall, or, will be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēris, v. aud-iēre,	<i>you will be heard.</i>
aud-iētur,	<i>he will be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iēmur,	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
aud-iēmīni,	<i>ye will be heard.</i>
aud-ientur,	<i>they will be heard.</i>

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*shall have been, will have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us ěro, <i>v. fuěro,</i>	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ěris, <i>v. fuěris,</i>	<i>you will have been heard.</i>
audīt-us ěrit, <i>v. fuěrit,</i>	<i>he will have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i ěrimus, <i>v. fuěrimus,</i>	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ěritis, <i>v. fuěritis,</i>	<i>ye will have been heard.</i>
audīt-i ěrunt, <i>v. fuěrint,</i>	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Aud-ĭre, aud-ĭtor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
aud-ĭtor,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ĭmĭni, aud-ĭmĭnor,	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
aud-iuntor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should be.*

Sing. Aud-iar,	<i>I may be heard.</i>
aud-iāris, <i>v. aud-iāre,</i>	<i>you may be heard.</i>
aud-iātur,	<i>he may be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iāmur,	<i>We may be heard.</i>
aud-iāmĭni,	<i>ye may be heard.</i>
aud-iantur,	<i>they may be heard.</i>

2. Imperfect Tense.—*might be.*

Sing. Aud-ĭrer,	<i>I might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕris, <i>v. aud-ĭrĕre,</i>	<i>you might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕtur,	<i>he might be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ĭrĕmur,	<i>We might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrĕmĭni,	<i>ye might be heard.</i>
aud-ĭrentur,	<i>they might be heard.</i>

3. Perfect Tense.—*may have been.*

Sing. Audīt-us sim, <i>v. fuěrim,</i>	<i>I may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sis, <i>v. fuěris,</i>	<i>you may have been heard.</i>
audīt-us sit, <i>v. fuěrit,</i>	<i>he may have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audīt-i sĭmus, <i>v. fuěrimus,</i>	<i>We may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sĭtis, <i>v. fuěritis,</i>	<i>ye may have been heard.</i>
audīt-i sint, <i>v. fuěrint,</i>	<i>they may have been heard.</i>

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have been.*

Sing.	Audīt-us essem, <i>v. fuissem,</i>	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-us esses, <i>v. fuisses,</i>	<i>you would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-us esset, <i>v. fuisset,</i>	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audīt-iessēmus, <i>v. fuissēmus,</i>	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-i essētis, <i>v. fuissētis,</i>	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
	audīt-i essent, <i>v. fuissent,</i>	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

Aud-īri, *to be heard.*

## Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīt-um esse, *vel fuisse,* *to have been heard.*

## Future Tense.

Audīt-um īri, *to be about to be heard.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## The Perfect Tense.

Audīt-us, *heard, or, being heard.*

The Participle in *dus*, or gerundive.

Audien-dus, *to be heard.*



The two Participles future, in *rus* and in *dus*, are often so combined with the tenses of *sum*, that a new conjugation called the *periphrastic* conjugation is formed in the following manner:—

## ACTIVE.

Pres.	Amaturus sum, etc.	<i>I am about to love.</i>
Imperf.	Amaturus eram, etc.	<i>I was about to love.</i>
Perf.	Amaturus fui, etc.	<i>I have been about to love.</i>
Pluperf.	Amaturus fueram, etc.	<i>I had been about to love.</i>
1st Fut.	Amaturus ero, etc.	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
2nd Fut.	Amaturus fuero, etc.	<i>I shall have been about to love.</i>



And the other moods are formed from the indicative, as is shewn in the conjugation of *sum* :

## PASSIVE.

Pres.	Amandus sum,	<i>I am meet to be loved.</i>
Imperf.	Amandus eram,	<i>I was meet to be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amandus fui,	<i>I have been meet to be loved.</i>
Pluperf.	Amandus fueram,	<i>I had been meet to be loved.</i>
1st Fut.	Amandus ero,	<i>I shall be meet to be loved.</i>
2nd Fut.	Amandus fuero,	<i>I shall have been meet to be loved.</i>

DEPONENT verbs are conjugated in this manner :

Hortor, hortāris *v.* hortāre, hortātus sum *v.* fui, hortāri ; hortandi, hortando, hortandum ; hortatum, hortatu ; hortans, hortatus, hortaturus, hortandus :

And so in the other conjugations.

From the third person singular of passive verbs an impersonal verb is formed ; and this third person passive exists in words which neither have, nor are capable of having, a regular passive voice : as,

Itur, <i>that is,</i>	{	Itur a me,	<i>I go.</i>	itum est, <i>that is,</i>	{	itum est a me,	<i>I went.</i>
		Itur a te,	<i>you go.</i>			itum est a te,	<i>you went.</i>
		Itur ab illo,	<i>he goes.</i>			itum est ab illo,	<i>he went.</i>
		Itur a nobis,	<i>we go.</i>			itum est a nobis,	<i>we went.</i>
		Itur a vobis,	<i>ye go.</i>			itum est a vobis,	<i>ye went.</i>
		Itur ab illis,	<i>they go.</i>			itum est ab illis,	<i>they went.</i>

*Future.*

Eundum est, <i>that is,</i>	{	Eundum est a me,	<i>I must go.</i>
		Eundum est a te,	<i>you must go.</i>
		Eundum est ab illo,	<i>he must go.</i>
		Eundum est a nobis,	<i>we must go.</i>
		Eundum est a vobis,	<i>ye must go.</i>
		Eundum est ab illis,	<i>they must go.</i>

And so in all other tenses. The pronoun is scarcely ever expressed in Latin with these impersonals, but is left to be inferred from the context ; as, Pugnātum est, *they fought* ; vivitur, *one lives*, etc.



## DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following:—

1. Possum, pōtes, pōtui, posse, pōtens :\* *to be able.*
2. Vōlo, vis, vōlui, velle; vōlendi, vōlendo, vōlendum; vōlens : *to be willing.*
3. Nōlo, nonvis, nōlui, nolle; nōlendi, nōlendo, nōlendum; nōlens : *to be unwilling.*
4. Mālo, māvis, mālui, malle; mālendi, mālendo, mālendum; mālens : *to be more willing, or, to have rather,*
5. Ēdo, ēdis, *vel* ēs, ēdi, ēdēre *vel* esse : ēdendi, ēdendo, ēdendum; ēsum, ēsu; ēdens, ēsurus : *to eat.*
6. Fěro, fers, tūli, ferre; fěrendi, fěrendo, fěrendum; lātum, lātu; fěrens, lātūrus : *to bear, or, suffer.*
7. Fīo, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fīeri; factus, făciendus : *to be made, or, done.*
8. Fěror, ferris *vel* ferre, lātus sum *vel* fui, ferri; lātus, fěrendus : *to be borne, or, suffered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest,	Possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
Vōlo,	vis,	vult,	vōlūmus,	vultis,	vōlunt.
Nōlo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nōlūmus,	nonvultis,	nōlunt.
Mālo,	māvis,	māvult,	mālūmus,	māvultis,	mālunt.
Ēdo,	ēdis, <i>v. es,</i>	ēdit, <i>v. est,</i>	ēdīmus,	ēditis, <i>v. estis,</i>	ēdunt.
Fěro,	fers,	fert,	fěrimus,	fertis,	fěrunt.
Fīo,	fis,	fit,	fīmus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Fěror,	ferris, <i>v. ferre,</i>	fertur,	fěrimur,	ferimīni,	feruntur.

\**Potens* is, however, only actually used as an adjective, in the sense of *powerful*.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põt-ěram,	ěras	ěrat,	ěramus,	ěrātis,	ěrant.
Võlě-bam,	} bas,	} bat,	} bāmus,	} bātis,	} bant.
Nõlě-bam,					
Mālě-bam,					
Ĕdě-bam,					
Fěrě-bam,					
Fīě-bam,	} bāris, <i>v.</i> bāre, bātur,	} bāmur,	} bāmīni,	} bantur.	
Fěrě-bar,					

3. Perfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põtu-i,	} isti,	} it,	} ĩmus,	} istis,	} ěrunt, <i>vel</i> ěre.
Võlu-i,					
Nõlu-i,					
Mālu-i,					
Ĕd-i,					
Tũl-i,	} sum, es, est,	} i sũmus, estis, sunt, <i>v.</i> fuěrunt,	} <i>v.</i>	} <i>v.</i>	} <i>v.</i>
Fact-us,					
Lāt-us,	} fui; fuisti; fuit;	} fuĩmus; fuistis; fuěre.			

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põtu-ěram,	} ěras,	} ěrat,	} ěramus,	} ěrātis,	} ěrant.
Võlu-ěram,					
Nõlu-ěram,					
Mālu-ěram,					
Ĕd-ěram,					
Tũl-ěram,	} ěram, ěras, ěrat,	} i ěramus, ěrātis, ěrant,	} <i>v.</i>	} <i>v.</i>	} <i>v.</i>
Fact-us,					
Lāt-us,	} fuěram; -ěras; -ěrat;	} fuěramus; fuěrātis; fuěrant.			

5. First Future Tense.—*I shall, or, will be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põt-ěro, Võl-am, Nõl-am, Mål-am, Ēd-am, Fěr-am, Fī-am, Fěr-ar,	ěris,  es,  ěris, <i>v. ěre,</i>	ěrit,  et,  ětur,	ěřimus,  ēmus,  ēmur,	ěřitis,  ētis,  ēmīni,	ěrunt.  ent.  entur.

6. Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense.—*I shall have been able.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Põtuěro, Võluěro, Nõluěro, Máluěro, Ēděro, Tũlěro, Factus, Lātus,	ěris,  ěro, <i>ěris,</i> <i>v. v.</i> fuěro, fuěris,	ěrit,  ěrit, <i>ěrit,</i> <i>v. v.</i> fuěrit,	ěřimus,  Facti,  Lati,	ěřitis,  ěřimus, <i>ěřitis,</i> <i>v. v.</i> fuěřimus, fuěřitis,	ěrint.  ěrunt, <i>v. v.</i> fuěrint.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, and malo,* have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nõli, nõlito ;	nõlīte, nõlītōte.
Ēde, ědīto, <i>vel</i> Es, esto ; ědīto, <i>vel</i> , esto ;	ědīte, ědītōte, <i>vel</i> , este, estote ; ědunto.
Fer, fertō ; fertō ;	ferte, fertote ; ferunto.
Fī, fīto ; fīto ;	fīte, fītote ; fiunto.
Fer-re, -tor ; fertor ;	fěřimīn-i, -or ; feruntor.

## SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-im,	}	is, it,	īmus,	ītis,	int.
Vēl-im,					
Nōl-im,					
Māl-im,					
Ēd-am,	}	as, at,	āmus,	ātis,	ant.
Fēr-am,					
Fī-am,					
Fēr-ar, -āris, v. āre ; ātur,					
			āmur,	āmīni,	antur.

2. Imperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-em,	}	es, et,	ēmus,	ētis,	ent.
Vell-em,					
Noll-em,					
Mall-em,					
Ēdēr-em,	}		ēmur,	ēmīni,	entur.
vel,					
Ess-em,					
Ferr-em,					
Fīēr-em,					
Ferr-er,		-ēris, v. ēre ; ētur,			

3. Perfect Tense.—*I may have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>					
Pötu-ėrim,	}	ėris, ėrit,	ėřimus,	ėřitis,	ėrint.			
Völu-ėrim,								
Nölu-ėrim,								
Mālu-ėrim,								
Ēd-ėrim,	}		i sīmus,	sītis,	sint,			
Tül-ėrim,								
Fact-us,						sim, sis, sit,	v. v. v.	v. v. v.
Lāt-us,						fuė-rim; ris; rit;	fuėřimus; fuėřitis; fuėřint.	

4. Pluperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>				
Pötu-issem,	}	isses, isset,	issemus, issētis, issent.			
Völu-issem,						
Nölu-issem,						
Mālu-issem,						
Ēd-issem,						
Tül-issem,	}	fuissem; isses; isset;	fuissemus; fuissētis; fuissent.			
Fact-us,						
Iāt-us,						
			i	essēmus,	essētis,	essent,
		<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>	<i>v.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*I may be about to eat, &c.*

Ēsurus	}	sim,	sis,	sit,		i	sīmus,	sītis,	sint.
Lāturus									

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

Posse.	Ēděre, <i>vel</i> , esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fīeri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

Pötuisse.	Ēdisse.
Völuisse.	Tülisse.
Nöluisse.	Factum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.
Māluisse.	Lātum esse, <i>vel</i> , fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

Ēsūrum esse.	Factum iri.
Lātūrum esse.	Lātum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive mood.

*EO, to go*, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, \*īvi, īre, eundi, eundo, eundum, ĩtum, ĩtu, iens, ĩtūrus.

*Indic. M.* } *Sing.* Eo, is, it.     *Pl.* Imus, ĩtis, eunt.  
*Pres. T.* }

\* In all the compounds of *eo*, as *redeo, abeo*, etc. this tense is almost invariably found *ii*, not *ivi*; as, *redīi, abīi* etc.

*Imp. Tense. Sing.* Ibam, ĩbas, ĩbat. *Pl.* -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

*Perf. Tense.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, ivērunt, *v.* ěre.

*Pluperf. Tense.* Ivĕram, -as, -at; -āmus, -ātis, -ant.

*First Fut. Sing.* Ibo, ĩbis, ĩbit. *Pl.* -ĭmus, -ĭtis, -unt.

*2nd Fut.* Ivĕro, ivĕris, ivĕrit; ivĕrĭmus, ivĕrĭtis, ivĕrint.

*Imp. M. Sing.* I, ito; ito. *Pl.* ĩte, itote; eunto.

*Potent. M. Pres. Sing.* Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eāmus, eātis,

*Imperf.* Irem, etc. [eant.

*Perf.* Ivĕrim, etc.

*Pluperf.* Ivĕssem, etc.

*Fut.* Iturus sim, etc.

*Gerunds*; Eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Participle Pres. T.* Iens, *gen.* eūntis.

*Participle Future, Itūrus.\**

*Obs.* In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined, also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable; except that these last two have no Imperative mood or Gerunds.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *defective*, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as,

*AIO, I say.*

*Ind. M. Pres. T. S.* Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* ——— Aiunt.

*Imp. T. Sing.* Aiĕ-bam, -bas, -bat. *Pl.* -bamus, -batis, -bant.

*Perf. Tense. Sing.* — Ait.

*Sub. or Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing.* — Aias, aiat. *Pl.* aiant.

*Particip. Pres. Tense.* Aiens.

*FARI, to speak.*

*Pres. 3d. Sing.* Fātur.

*Perf.* Fātus sum, es, etc.

*Pluperf.* Fātus eram, etc.

*First Fut.* Fābor— no other person.

\* *Eo* has no passive voice except in the third sing. used as an impersonal verb, as has been shewn above (p. 57,) and the passive participle in *dus*, or gerundive *eundus*; but some of its compounds, *ādeo*, to approach, *prætereo*, to pass by, &c. have a passive voice, formed regularly from the active; as, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc. imperf. *adibar*, etc.

*Imper.* Fāre.

*Gerunds.* Fandi, Fando.

*Supine.* Fatu. — *Part. Perf.* Fatus. — *Part. Pass.*  
[Fandus.]

ĀVE, *Hail!*

*Imper. M. Sing.*—Āve, āvēto.—*Pl.* Āvēte, āvētōte.—  
*Infinitive Mood.* Āvēre.

SALVE, *Hail!*

*Indicat. M. Future T. Sing.* — Salvēbis.

*Imper. M. S.*—Salve, salveto.—*Pl.* Salvēte, salvētōte.  
*Infinitive M.* Salvēre.

CEDO, *Give me.*

*Imper. M. Sing.*—Cēdo.—*Pl.*—Cette.\*

QUÆSO, *I pray.*

*Indic. M. Pres. T. S.* Quæso. *Pl.* Quæsūmus.

INQUAM, *I say.*

*Ind. M. Pres. T. S.* Inquam, -quis, -quit. *Pl.* In-  
quīmus, inquītis, inquiunt.

*Preterimp. T. S.*—Inquiebat. *Pl.*—Inquiebant.

*Preterp. T. S.* —Inquisti.

*Future T. Sing.* —Inquies, inquiet.

*Cœpi*, I have begun, *mēmīni*, I remember, *nōvi*, I know, *odi*, I hate, are perfects of obsolete presents, (except *novi*, which is also the perfect of *nosco*,) and have these tenses only which are derived from the perfect. Their pluperfect tense has the sense of the imperfect; i.e. *memineram*, “I did remember,” not, “I had remembered,” *etc.* and the second future has the sense of the first future; as, *odero* “I shall hate,” not “I shall have hated.”

<i>Cœpi</i> ,	<i>Mēmīni</i> ,	(So, <i>ōdi</i> , <i>nōvi</i> .)
<i>Cœpisti</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnisti</i> ,	
<i>Cœpit</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnit</i> ,	
<i>Cœpīmus</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnīmus</i> ,	
<i>Cœpistis</i> ,	<i>Mēmīnistis</i> ,	
<i>Cœperunt</i> , <i>v. ēre.</i>	<i>Mēmīnērunt</i> , <i>v. ēre.</i>	

\* Found only in the oldest writers.



*Pluperf.* Cæpëram, meminëram, ôdëram, nôvëram.

*Future.* Cæpëro, mëmīnëro, ôdëro, nôvëro.

*Imper.* Mëmënto, mëmëntôte.—The other verbs have no imperative.

*Potent. Perf.* Cæpërim, mëmīnërim, ôdërim, nôvërim.

*Pluperf.* Cæpisse, meminisse, odisse, novisse.

*Infinitive.* Cæpisse, mëmīnisse, ôdisse, nôvisse.

*Part. fut. act.* Cæpturus, ôsûrus.—The others have no participle.

*Perf. part. pass.* Cæptus.

*Ausim*, I may dare, an old form of the present subjunctive of *audeo*.

Ausim, ausis, ausit ;——ausint.

*Faxim*, I may do, a similar form from *facio*.

Faxim, faxis, faxit ; faximus, faxitis, faxint.

*Fut.* faxo.

## ADVERBS.

An *Adverb* is a part of speech joined to verbs and nouns adjective (sometimes even to other adverbs) to qualify them; as, *loquitur bène*, he speaks well; *scribunt mäle*, they write badly.\*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a part of speech which joins sentences or words together: some connect things of the same kind, and are called *copulative conjunctions*; some connect things which are distinct from each other, and are called *disjunctive conjunctions*.—The copulative conjunctions are *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *necnon*, “and,” *nëque*, “nor,” *quàm*, “than.”—The disjunctive conjunctions are *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, *sive*, *seu*, “or.”

---

\* When derived from adjectives, adverbs have comparative and superlative degrees, formed from the corresponding degrees of the adjectives; as, from *doctus* learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*, are derived *docte* learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most learnedly.

## PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a part of speech which governs a case, and which expresses the relation of nouns to one another, or to verbs; as, *iter per Italiam*, a journey through Italy; *exit e domo*, he goes out of the house.

These Prepositions have an *Accusative* case after them :

<i>Ad</i> , to.	<i>Penes</i> , in the power of.
<i>Adversum, Adversus</i> , against, towards.	<i>Per</i> , through.
<i>Ante</i> , before.	<i>Pōne</i> , behind.
<i>Apud</i> , at, or near.	<i>Post</i> , after.
<i>Circa, circum</i> , about.	<i>Præter</i> , besides, except, before (as, <i>præter cæteros</i> , before others.)
<i>Circiter</i> , about (of time, or number.)	<i>Prōpe</i> , (and compar. and superl. <i>prōpius, proxime</i> ) nigh, or near to.
<i>Cis, citra</i> , on this side,	<i>Propter</i> , on account of, near to.
<i>Contra</i> , against.	<i>Sæcundum</i> , according to.
<i>Erga</i> , towards.	<i>Supra</i> , above.
<i>Extra</i> , without.	<i>Trans</i> , on the further side.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath, below.	<i>Versus</i> , towards.
<i>Inter</i> , between, or among.	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.
<i>Intra</i> , within.	
<i>Juxta</i> , beside, or near to.	
<i>Ob</i> , on account of, before, (as <i>ob oculos</i> , before the eyes.)	

The Prepositions following have an *Ablative* case after them :

<i>A</i> , (and before vowels <i>ab</i> .) * from, by.	<i>E, ex</i> , from, out of, in (as <i>ex ordine</i> , in order.)
<i>Absque</i> , without.	<i>Præ</i> , † before, in comparison of, on account of.
<i>Coram</i> , before, or in presence of.	<i>Pro</i> , for, in front of.
<i>Cum</i> , with.	<i>Sine</i> , without.
<i>De</i> , from, concerning.	<i>Tenus</i> , up to, as far as. ‡

\* Before *te, abs* is also used in the same sense by Cicero, and before other words by Terence and older writers. It is never used in poetry.

† *Præ* signifies of *place*, with verbs of motion only, and with pronouns.

‡ *Tenus* is used also with a genitive, when the noun is in the plural number; and once by Livy with a noun in the singular; *Coreyræ tenus*, till far as Coreyra.

The prepositions *versus* and *tenuis* are always, *penes* sometimes, put after the noun governed by them: so, when the noun governed by them is the relative, *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*, are also placed sometimes after their case: when *cum* is joined with *me*, *nobis*, *te*, *vobis*, *se*, or the relative, it is put after them, and united with them so as to make one word; as, *mecum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*; etc.

The Prepositions following have either an Accusative or an Ablative case after them:

*In*, for *into*, signifying motion *towards*, *against*, *over*, etc. has an accusative case; as, *Eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

*In*, meaning "in," has the ablative case; as, *In illo spes est*, my hope is in him.

*Sub*, after verbs of motion, governs an accusative case, and also when it denotes time; as, *Mittitur sub jugum*, he is sent under the yoke; *sub noctem*, about nightfall. When it means "under," it governs an ablative case; as, *Sub terrâ*, under the earth.

*Subter*, under, beneath, governs the accusative; the ablative only in poetry; (it is very rarely used at all.)

*Sûper*, when it means "on, above, besides," governs the accusative case; as, *Sûper terram*, above the earth: when it means "concerning, about," it governs the ablative; as, *Rõgĩtans multa sûper Priamo*, asking many things about Priam. Besides these regular prepositions, some adverbs are used occasionally as prepositions, especially in poetry.

With the Accusative:

*Usque* (properly, and more usually, in good prose invariably, *usque ad*,) as far as.

With the Ablative:

*Pålam*, in the presence of.

*Prõcul*, (properly, and more usually, *procul a*,) far from.

*Sĩmul*, (only poetically for *simul cum*,) together with.

With the Accusative or Ablative:

*Clam*, without the knowledge of, (the accusative, however, is very rare and antiquated.)

## OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION is a part of speech which betokens a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

## THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three ConCORDS, or AGREEMENTS, in Latin:

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

## THE FIRST CONCORD.

A VERB agrees with its nominative case in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who*, or *what*? with the verb; and the word that answers to the question, is the nominative case to the verb; as, *who reads? who regard not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,  
<sup>a</sup>*Præceptor* <sup>b</sup>*legit*, <sup>a</sup>*vos verò* <sup>b</sup>*negligitis*.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a neuter substantive in the nominative, in which case the verb agrees with that, as if it were a noun; as,

*Diluculò* <sup>a</sup>*surgere saluberrimum* <sup>b</sup>*est*,  
 To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

When two or more substantives are so joined in one sentence, that the verb depends on both or on all of them, the verb is usually put in the plural number, and agrees especially with the nominative case of the most worthy person:\* when, however, the nouns denote things, not persons, the verb is often kept in the singular number; as, *Ego et tu sumus in tuto*, I and you are in safety: *Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat*, when time and necessity require.

---

\* In grammatical language, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Sometimes also a noun of multitude, (that is, a noun expressing more persons or things than one,) though in the singular number itself, is followed by a verb in the plural number; as, *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rushes on.

When the nominative case to the verb is a personal pronoun, it is usually omitted in Latin, unless particular emphasis be desired; as, He governs France, *Regit Galliam*: I am wiser than you, *Ego sum te sapientior*.

## THE SECOND CONCORD.

The adjective agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as,

<sup>a</sup>*Amicus* <sup>b</sup>*certus* in <sup>a</sup>*re* <sup>b</sup>*incertá* *cernitur*,  
A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

When two or more substantives come together in one sentence, and have one adjective referring to all of them, the adjective is put in the plural number, and as to gender agrees with the substantive of the most worthy gender, (the masculine being accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter.) But, when the nouns denote things, the adjective is often put in the neuter; when they denote both persons and things, the adjective may either agree with the noun denoting the person, or be put in the neuter gender; as, *Mihi pater et mater mortui sunt*, my father and mother are dead: *Ira et avāritia pōtentia sunt*, anger and avarice are powerful.

Sometimes the infinitive mood of a verb is used as a noun of the neuter gender, and the adjective agrees with it as if it were such a noun; and sometimes an entire sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective which is applied to it is put in the neuter gender; as, *Errāre hūmānum est*, to err is human.

Sometimes, when persons are denoted by neuter substantives, the adjective, nevertheless, is put in the

masculine or feminine gender ; as, *Millia trīginta servōrum capti sunt*, thirty thousand slaves were taken.

When in English the word *man*, or *thing*, is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the masculine or neuter gender ; as,

*Multi falluntur*, many men are deceived.

*Multa me impediērunt*, many things have hindered me.

### THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who*, or *what?* with the verb ; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as,

<sup>a</sup> *Vir sapit*, <sup>b</sup> *qui pauca loquitur*,

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it is put in the plural number ; and if they be of different persons, the relative agrees with the antecedent of the more worthy person ; as, *Ego et tu qui ērāmus dōmi*, I and you who were at home.

Sometimes a sentence supplies the place of the antecedent, and in this case the relative is put in the neuter gender ; as, *In tempore vēni, quod rērum omnium est primum*, I came in time, which is the most important thing of all.

When the relative is placed between two substantives, to both of which it refers, it commonly agrees with the latter ; as, *Animal quem vocāmus hōmīnem*, the animal which we call man.



PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS,  
QUÆ GENUS,  
AS IN PRÆSENTI,  
SYNTAXIS,  
ET PROSODIA.





## THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

## I.

*PROPRIA* quæ maribus tribuuntur mascula dicas ;  
*Ut sunt Divorum*, Mars, Bacchus, Æpollo ; *Virorum*,  
*Ut Cato*, Virgilius ; *Fluviorum*, ut Tĭbris, Orontes ;  
*Mensium*, ut October ; *Ventorum*, ut Libs, Nötus, Auster ;  
*Montium*, ut Ossa ; *Alpis tamen est muliebris*, et Cæta, 5  
 Cyllēnē, Rhödöpe, et cæcis gravis ignibus Ætna ;  
 Pēlion est neutrum ; Sōractē, Cēraunia, neutra.

## II.

*Propria* fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,  
*Fæmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive Dearum*  
*Sunt*, ut Jünö, Vēnus ; *Muliebria*, ut Anna, Philōtis ; 10  
*Urbium*, ut Elis, Opus ; *Regionum*, ut Græcia, Persis :  
*Insulæ item nomen*, ceu Crēta, Brĭtannia, Cÿprus.  
*Neutrum Dūlichium*, ventura ut regula monstrat :  
*Quasdam etiam excipias urbes*, nam mascula Sulmo,  
*Et Delphi*, et similes ; genus est utrumque Sēlinus, 15  
 Pharsālus, et Mārathon : *Quædam neutralia*, ut Argos,  
 Tuscūlum, item Tĭbur, luxuque imbelle Tārentum,  
 Pergāmaque, et quot in a finem pluraliã præstant.  
*Fæmineum et neutrum Præneste dat*, Ilion, Anxur.  
*Est neutrum Lätium*, mas Bosphörus, adjice Pontus. 20

## III.

*Fæminei generis gemmarum nomina disces*,  
*Sapphirus veluti ; ast öpālus mas*, atque smāragdus :  
*Arborum item ærnes muliebria nomina*, ut alnus,  
 Cūpressus, cedrus ; *mas spīnus*, *mas öleaster*.  
*Cætera in er neutrale genus plerumque videbis*, 25  
*Quale pāpāver*, äcer : *queis thus atque adjice rōbur*.  
*Adjungunt muliebre mari cÿtĭsusque*, rŭbusque ;  
*Intūbus in numero plurali habet intūba neutrum*.  
*Nomina sunt volucrum*, ceu passer, hĭrundo ; *ferarum*.

*Ut felis, vulpes ; et piscium, ut ostrea, cētus, 30*  
*Dicta epicæna, quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.*  
*Multa etiam commune dabunt genus ; ut lēpus, anser,*  
*Vespertilio, mus, grus, bos, cānis, atque ělēphantus :*  
*Fæmineumque mari jungunt sus, tīgris, et anguis,*  
*Et serpens, dāmæque, et egentes lumine talpæ. 35*

## IV. DECLENSION I.

*As, es, mascula erunt ; a, e, inflexio prima,*  
*Fæminei generis, prohibet nisi sensus, habebit.*  
*Mas Bōreas, sãtrãpes ; muliebris lītëra, Circe ;*  
*Sed mas scriba genus, sic scurra, athlëta, lãnista.*

## V. DECLENSION II.

*Um neutrale, us et er dat mas plerumque secunda. 40*  
*Sic regnum neutrum, dōmīnus mas atque mägister :*  
*Sed quæ dicta supra sunt, excipienda legenti*  
*Pauca dabunt, nam arbor mālus muliebris, et urbis*  
*Nomen Abÿdus erit, sic alvus, hūmus, cōlus, atque*  
*Carbasus, et vannus ; sic Nilo nota phãselus ; 45*  
*Pauca etiam occurrent Græcis deducta, pãpÿrus,*  
*Antidótus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, et illa*  
*Os breve quot claudit, ceu Dēlos, Sestos, et Isthmos.*  
*Sed vīrus, pēlãgus neutralia, et adjice vulgus,*  
*Interdum quamvis hoc inter mascula ponas ; 50*  
*Non genus est ullum quo non pēnus invenietur.*

## VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

*Tertia quas voces lectori inflexio reddit*  
*Crede mares, si claudit or, os, er, o quoque rectum,*  
*Vel quas es fīnit, crescitque quibus genitivus.*  
*Sic hōnor, atque hēros, crãter, sermoque, tãpesque ; 55*  
*At soror atque uxor muliebria semper, et arbor ;*

*Sed cor, marmor, ãdor neutralia semper, et æquor.  
 Sic est fœminei generis cos, dosque, sed os seu  
 Oris habet sive ossis erit neutrale, chaosque  
 Et mēlos, atque alia à linguâ deducta Pelasgâ. 60  
 Mas tüber est fructus, sed erit muliebris ut arbor ;  
 Linter communis ; neutrum ver, verber, et ūber,  
 Atque cãdãver, ïter, spinther, quibus adjice tuber.  
 Atque per er finita notant quot nomina plantas.  
 Excipias quoque, lector, hyperdissyllabon in do, 65  
 Et quot io claudit verbo deducta, libïdo,  
 Formïdoque velut ; sic dictio, lectio ; porro  
 Est cãro atque ēcho atque Argo et muliebris ïmãgo ;  
 Cũ notat affectum muliebris rite cŭpïdo est ;  
 Et tamen hoc vates interdum in mascula cogunt. 70  
 Pauca per es finita licet crescentia discas  
 Fœminei generis ; merges, mercesque, quiesque,  
 Et tēgēs atque sēges ; quãdrupes communis, et āles,  
 Atque obses, cõmēs, atque hospes, quibus adjice princeps.*

VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

*Omne quod exit in as, ïs, ÿs, aus, x, es quoque, quando 75  
 Non genitivo crescit, erit muliebre ; superque  
 Præbet idem genus s liquidã præeunte memento.  
 Sic piētas, fraus, atque chlãmys, nãvisque, rãtisque,  
 Pax, rãdix, nũbes, et hyems, mors ; excipe pauca ;  
 Mas erit as assis, compostaque ; mas ělēphasque, 80  
 Et quidquid Græcum genitivo habet antis, ut Atlas,  
 Atque gïgas, ãdãmas ; e sensu vas vãdis est mas ;  
 Vas vãsis neutrum, sic fas neutrale, nefasque.  
 Multa quoque is finita videbis mascula ; pulvis,  
 Et pollis, cucumis, sanguis, lapis, amnis, et axis, 85  
 Glis, caulis, cassis, cũ non crescit genitivo,  
 (Cassis enim, venit à quo cassïdis, est muliebre,)  
 Collis, fascis, follis, funis, pestis, et ensis,  
 Ignis, pãnis, piscis, postis, et adjice mensis,  
 Orbis, sentis, torris, vectis, vermis, et unguis, 90  
 Nãtãlis ; numero et primo quæ rarius exstant,*

Annāles, *rapidisque jūgālībus adde mōlāres.*  
*Quinetiam cernes communia pauca, cānālis,*  
*Et scrōbis, et torquis, callis, fīnis, cīnis; etsi*  
*Hæc duo plurali apparent tibi mascula tantum: 95*  
*Et, quoniam nunc vir nunc fœmina dicitur, hostis*  
*Est commune genus, cīvis, testis, pātruelis.*  
*Est data lex potior cur mas Hālys exstet, et Othrys.*  
*Mascula nulla es non crescens dat, ācīnāce dempto;*  
*At vātes commune, vēpres etiam, atque pālumbes. 100*  
*Quæ Græca ax finit, sunt plurima mascula, thōrax,*  
*Et cordax, anthrax; sic ex quæ plurima claudit,*  
*Qualis āpex, cōdex, cīmex, cortexque, cūlexque,*  
*Grex, vertex, mūrex, pūlex, caudexque, sīlexque:*  
*Pauca per ix finita, cālix, fornix, īta phœnix; 105*  
*Græcaque in yx, ut ōnyx, et ōryx, bombyxque, cālyxque:*  
*Sic quincunx, septunx, et cætera mascula: porro*  
*Mascula ādeps, dens, fons, mons, pons, hūdropsque,*  
*chālybsque;*  
*Gryps, torrens, ōriensque, rūdensque, bīdensque, tri-*  
*densque:*  
*Mascula ēpopsque mēropsque, et stirps communis*  
*habetur. 110*

## VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS

*Quæ claudunt a, e, i, y, c, neutra leguntur.*  
*l, n, t, ar, ur, us; videas exempla; poēma,*  
*Et māre, mīsŷ, sīnāpi, ālec, lac, mel, ānīmalque,*  
*Carmen, et adde cāput, lāquear, jēcūr, adjice tempus.*  
*Mascula sol, mūgil; sic sal plerumque, sālesque 115*  
*Plurali semper.—Communia præsul et exul,*  
*Atque vīgil; fīdīcen, ren, pecten mascula; et addas*  
*Deducta à Græcā linguā paucissima, delphin,*  
*Līchen, et pæan, primāque è lege Cīthæron, 120*  
*Sīndon, atque īcon muliebria sunt, et Āmazon,*  
*Et numero Aīcyones quæ primo rarius exstant:*  
*Significans socium par mas, mas turtur, et augur,*  
*Fur, vultur, sic furfur: in us muliebria pauca,*

*Ut virtus, incus, tellus, p̄alus, atque j̄uentus,  
Atque p̄cus p̄cūdis, p̄cōris dans accipe neutrum.* 125

IX. DECLENSION IV.

*U neutrum, ut cornu ; mas us, ceu cursus et actus ;  
Porticus atque tribus muliebria, ācusque, dōmusque,  
Et mānus, et quercus, sic cum quinquātribus īdus ;  
Sensus ānus, nūrus, et socrus muliebria monstrat.*

X. DECLENSION V.

*Quinta genus muliebre dat, ut spes ; at numero mas  
Plurali tantum, primo commune dies est.* 131

XI. ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia formam,  
Ut felix, audax, retinent genus omne sub unā.  
Sub geminā si voce cadunt, velut omnis et omne,  
Vox commune duūm prior est, vox altera neutrum.* 135  
*At si tres variant voces, sācer ut, sācra, sācrum,  
Vox prima est mas, altera f̄æmina, tertia neutrum.*

*Sunt quēis plurales casus in a non adhibentur,  
Pauper, īnops, p̄ber, sospes, cum dēgēner, ūber,  
Et dīves, lōcūples, mēm̄or, immēm̄or, atque sūperstes.* 140

NOUNS HETEROCLITE, OR IRREGULAR.

*Quæ genus aut flexum variant, quæcunque novato  
Ritu deficiunt, superantve, Heteroclita sunt.*

*Hæc genus in variis numeris variantia cernis :*

*Nam primo maria hæc numero sunt, neutra secundo :*  
 Tartārus horribilis, sic sībilus, intūbus exstant ; 5  
*Plurali jocus at numero genus addit utrumque,*  
*Et locus ; hæc primo muliebria, neutra secundo :*  
 Pergāmos, et lautis exquirenda ostrea cænis,  
 Carbāsus ; hæc primo neutrum, mas altero habebunt,  
 Et sīser, et cælum, Junonique Argos amatum : 10  
*Rastrum plurali et frenum genere exstat utroque,*  
*Quin ěpulum primo, ast ěpulæ plurale leguntur.*

*Quæ sequitur manca est casu, numerove propago :*

*His neutris nullos poteris tu cernere casus,*  
*Nī qui sunt, ut scis, tibi semper in hoc genere idem ; 15*  
 Hippōmānes, cācōēthēs, ěpos, mēlos, adjice gummi,  
 Et fas, māne, nihil, pondo, instar ; grata perenni  
 Sub Zephyro Tempe plurali ; tot, quot, et omnes  
 A tribus ad centum numeri, quæ aptota vocantur.

*Sunt quoque rectus abest quæis casus nomina multa, 20*  
*Aut alii, nullo certo ordine deficientes.*  
 Ut fors, frūgis, ōpis, dāpis, et vīcis, impētis, et vis,  
 Verbēris, et fidis, atque lues, sordemque, vepremque ;  
 Quin ablativo solo sunt pauca videnda,  
 Ut sunt compēde, fauce, prēce, atque ambāge ; sed omnia  
 Integra plurali numero plerumque leguntur, 26  
 Sic jussu, nātu, permissu, sponte ; rōgātu,  
 Mandātu ; sed et his pluralis deficit, atque  
 Occurrent quoque plura suo tibi tempore quæque.

*Hæc numerum nunquam (prohibet nam sensus) habebunt*  
*Pluralem ; cœnum, līmus, sic trītīcum, et aurum, 31*  
 Argentum, et paria ; his pietas addenda, pūdorque,  
 Et sītis, atque fāmes, infantia, firma juvenus,  
 Atque sēnecta gravis, vel (vox magis apta) sēnectus,  
 Ver, vesper, lētum, spēcīmen, victusque, sūpellexque,  
 Et vīrus, sanguis, plebs, atque ignobile vulgus ; 36  
 Cum paucis aliis ; sic nomina propria cuncta.

NOUNS defective in the Singular Number.

*Mascula sunt tantùm numero contenta secundo,*  
 Mānes, majōres, cancelli, libēri, et antes,  
 Prīmōres, prōcēres, fasti simul, atque minōres, 40  
 Infēri, item Sūpēri, lēmures, quibus adde Pēnātes,  
 Et loca plurali, quales Gābiique, Lōcrique,  
 Et quæcunque legas passim similis rationis.

*Hæc sunt fæminei generis, numerique secundi ;*  
 Exūviæ, phālēræ, grātes, et ineptiæ, et īdus, 45  
 Blanditiæ, induciæ ; simul insīdiæque, mīnæque,  
 Excūbiæ, nōnæ, nūgæ, trīcæque, cālendæ,  
 Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cūnæ, dīræ, exēquiæque,  
 Fēriæ, et infēriæ ; sic prīmītiæque, plāgæque,  
 Dēliciæ, tēnēbræque, et valvæ, dīvitiæque, 50  
 Nuptiæ item, et lactes : addantur Thēbæ et Athēnæ ;  
 Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

*Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur ;*  
 Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,  
 Arma, mǎpālia ; sic bellāria, mūnia, castra : 55  
 Funus justa petit, petit et sponsālia virgo ;  
 Rostra disertus amat, puerique crēpundia gestant,  
 Infantesque colunt cūnābūla : consulit exta  
 Augur, sacra piæ connectunt sarta puellæ.  
 Festa deūm poterunt, ceu Bacchānālia, jungi : 60  
 Quòd si plura leges, licet hâc quoque classe reponas.

NOUNS declined after both the second and fourth  
 Declensions.

*Invenies porro tu nomina pauca secundæ*  
*Quosdam etiam casus, lector, sumentia quartæ,*  
*Atque is præcipuè, atque e dedignantia fines,*  
*Ut laurus, necnon fīcus, dōmus, altaque pīnus, 65*  
*Et cōlus, et cornus, vivisque invisâ cupressus.*

## OF THE

## PERFECT TENSE, AND SUPINES OF VERBS.

## Of the Perfect Tense of simple Verbs.

## I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*As in præsenti perfectum format in avi,*  
*Ut no nas nāvi, vōcīto vōcītas vōcītavi ;*  
*Deme lāvo lāvi, jūvo jūvi ; quin cūbo semper*  
*Dat cūbui, sēco dat sēcui, mīcui mīco reddit ;*  
*Sic frīco dat frīcui, dōmo dat dōmui, a sōno semper* 5  
*Formatur sōnui, tōnuique tōno generabit ;*  
*Adde crēpo tibi quod crēpui, vēto quod vētui dat ;*  
*Interdum nēcō dat necui, plerumque necavi.*  
*Sāpius applicui dabit applico, rariis -avi, at*  
*Supplicō, multīplicō, semper formantur in āvi :* 10  
*Quippe dēdi do das, sto stas formare stēti vult.*

## II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans ;*  
*Ut nīgreo nīgres nīgrui, mōneo mōnui dat,*  
*Et geminum fugiens u, langueo langui habebit.*  
*Sed multa ingenuus puer excipienda videbit :* 15  
*Fit veo vi, ut mōveo mōvi, cāveo quoque cāvi ;*  
*Ferveo item fervi, sed sæpe et fervui habebit.*  
*Dat fleo fles flēvi, neo nēvi, dēleo format*  
*Dēlēvi ; exōleo et verbum simile omne dat -evi,*  
*Compleo complēvi format, rēpleoque rēplēvi.* 20  
*Dat cieo cīvi, sed raro preteritum exstat.*  
*Plurima sunt quorum perfectum desinit in si,*  
*Ut jūbeo jussi, maneo mansi, ardeo et arsi,*  
*Mulceo mulsi, suadeo suasi, rīdeo risi ;*  
*Hæreo sic hæsi formabit, torqueo torsi.* 25  
*L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si ;*  
*Urgeo ut ursi, mulgeo mulsi, fulgeo fulsi •*



<i>In deo sunt etiam quæ di dent, prandeo prandi,</i>	
<i>Et vīdeo, sēdeo, assīdeo, sic strīdeo strīdi :</i>	
<i>Quatuor in xi formantur, sic frīgeo frixi,</i>	30
<i>Augeo et auxi, lūceo lūgeo habent quoque luxi.</i>	
<i>Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima,</i>	
<i>Pendeo namque pēpendi, mordeo vultque mōmordi,</i>	
<i>Spondeo sponsondi, vult tondeo habere tōtondi.</i>	
<i>Passivi formam solam tria verba sequuntur,</i>	35
<i>Gaudeo gāvīsus, sōlītus sōleo, audeo et ausus.</i>	
<i>Perfecto quin pauca carent, ut mœreo monstrat,</i>	
<i>Atque āveo, atque hēbeo, scāteo, vēgeo, immīneoque ;</i>	
<i>Atque aliæ voces, quas usus rite docebit.</i>	

## III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>Tertia præteritum formabit ut hęc manifestum :</i>	40
<i>Bo fit psi, scribo ceu scripsi, sed bībo, lambo,</i>	
<i>Et scābo, bi faciunt ; quin occumbo occūbui dat.</i>	
<i>Co fit xi, ut dīco dixi, sed parco pēperci,</i>	
<i>Et vinco vīci, vetus īco sic facit ici.</i>	
<i>Sco fit vi, ut pasco pāvi ; attamen inde profectum</i>	45
<i>Compesco format compescui ; et adjice disco,</i>	
<i>Quod dīdīci semper format, poscoque pōposci.</i>	
<i>Simplicium formam verba inceptiva sequuntur,</i>	
<i>Nam cāleo cālui format, cāluique cālesco.</i>	
<i>Perfectum jactant nullum glisco atque fātisco,</i>	50
<i>Cum paucis aliis a nomine ritè profectis.</i>	
<i>Do fit si, ut claudio clausi, cēdo geminans s</i>	
<i>Dat cessi ; di pauca dabunt, ut scando, prehendo,</i>	
<i>Accendo, cūdo, mando, dēfendo, ědo, pando,</i>	
<i>Et strīdo, sīdo ; findo et fundo abjiciunt n,</i>	55
<i>Inde fīdi, fūdi ; rarum dat rūdo rūdivi ;</i>	
<i>Quinetiam paucis geminatur syllaba prima,</i>	
<i>Pendo pēpendi, tendo tētendi, cædo cēcīdi,</i>	
<i>Ēt cādo dat cēcīdi, tundo tūtūdi ; ultima vero</i>	
<i>Plerumque in natis a do geminatur, ut ědo,</i>	60
<i>Abdo, condo -dīdi, reddo et cætera formant ;</i>	
<i>Abcondo tamen abscondi formare videbis.</i>	

- Passivi formam fīdo sum fīsus habebit.*  
 Go fit xi, ut jungo junxi; sed r ante go vult si,  
 Ut spargo sparsi; lēgo lēgi, et āgo facit ēgi, 65  
 Et frango frēgi; pango pro fīgere panxi,  
 (Inde tamen composta dabunt semper tibi -pēgi)  
 Cūm cernis pēpīgi, est præsens plerumque paciscor.  
 Dat tango tētīgi, pūpūgi dabit ordine pungo,  
 Sed punxi compōsta; carent perfecto ambīgo, vergo. 70  
 Guo, ceu restinguo restinxi, xi tibi format.  
 Ho fit xi, traho quod traxi docet, et veho vexi.  
 Lo fit ui, cōlo ceu colui; psallo excipe psalli;  
 Excello legem sequitur, sed percūli habebit  
 Percello; pēpūli dat pello, fallo fēfelli, 75  
 Dat vello velli tibi sēpius, est ubi vulsi.  
 Mo fit mpsi, cōmo ceu compsi; at ěmo facit ēmi;  
 Deinde vōmoque frēmoque gēmoque trēmoque sequuntur,  
 Quæ per ui perfecta dabunt, dabit et prēmo pressi.  
 No fit vi, sīno ceu sivi, quin ordine cerno 80  
 Mutato crēvi; sic sperno; sternoque stravi,  
 Gigno, pōno, cāno, gēnui, pōsui, cēcīni dant;  
 Cujus ui compōsta, ut concīno concīnui, dant.  
 Po fit psi, ut sculpo sculpsi, carpo quoque carpsi;  
 Sed rumpo semper rūpi, strēpui strepo format. 85  
 Quo fit xi, cōquo ceu coxi, linquo excipe liqui.  
 Ro fit si, sæpe s geminato, quod gēro monstrat,  
 Dans gessi; tēro dat trīvi, curroque cūcurri;  
 Quæro quæsīvi, neque enim fēro prætereatur,  
 Quod tūli habet; sēro dat sēvi, compōsta sed ejus 90  
 Et -sevi et -sērui dant, insēro, consēro, formā  
 Mutatā ad sensum, -sērui sed dēsēro tantum,  
 Assēro item formant; nullum fūro præteritum dat.  
 So fit si, ut vīso visi, pinso adjice pinsi,  
 Pinsui item; depso quoque depsui; at omne dat -esso  
 -essīvi, ut probat arcesso, incesso, atque lācesso. 96  
 To fit ti, ut verto verti; sic ordine verso,  
 Obstīti ab obsisto fluit, adde insisto, rēsisto;  
 Dat mitto mīsi, pēto vult formare pētivi,  
 Sterto stertui habet, mēto messui: ab -ecto fit -exi, 100

- Ut flecto flexi ; necto dat nexui, habetque  
Nexi, sic pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.  
Vo fit vi, ut volvo volvi, vivo excipe vixi.  
Xo xui habet, texo ut monstrat, quod texui habebit.*
- Fit cio ci, ut făcio fēci, jăcio quoque jēci ;* 105  
*Allicio allexi, ēlicio ēlicui tibi format.*
- Aspicio aspexi, sic conspicio, inspicioque.  
Fit dio di, ut fōdio fōdi ; gio, ceu fūgio, -gi.  
Fit pio pi, ut căpio cēpi ; cūpio ecce cūpivi,  
Et răpio răpui, săpio săpui atque săpivi.* 110
- Dat părio pēpēri ; dat concutio concussi.  
Denique uo fit ui, ut stătuo stătui ; pluo plūvi  
Format, sive plui ; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.  
Compositum simplex sequitur ; sed syllaba semper  
Quam simplex geminat compōsto non geminatur.* 115

#### IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- Quarta dat is ivi, ut monstrat scio scis tibi scīvi ;  
Excipias vĕnio dans vĕni, raucio rausi,  
Haurio item hausi, farcio farci, fulcio fulsi,  
Sarcio sarci, sentio sensi, sēpio sepsi,  
Sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi ; tum tria verba* 120  
*Formantur per ui ; sălio, apĕrio, opĕrioque,  
In ri compĕrio -rio mutat, repĕrioque,  
Perfectum prăbent fĕrio atque sŭperbio nullum.*

#### V. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

- Verba hæc simplicia prăsentis prăteritique,  
Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant :* 125  
*Damno, lacto, săcro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fătiscor,  
Cando vetus, capto, jacto, pătior, grădiorque,  
Partio, carpo, pătro, scando, sic farcio, spargo.*

#### VI. Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

- Hæc hăbeo, lăteo, sălio, stătuo, cădo, lædo,  
Tango, căno, plăceo, tĕneo, sic cædo, cecīdi,* 130  
*Quăro, ĕgeo, făteor, tăceo, săpio, răpioque,*

*Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,  
Ut rāpio, erīpio ; sed verbi simplicis usum  
Hæc duo, complāceo cum perplāceo, benè servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant ; 135  
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, rēsulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :  
Id docet, à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatioque,  
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata ;  
Plaudo au mutat in o, quod displōdo tibi monstrat. 140*

VII. Compound Verbs which change the Vowel of the Present Tense into I, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

*Hæc si componas, āgo, ěmo, sĕdeo, rĕgo, frango,  
Et cāpio, jācio, lācio, spēcio, prĕmo, pango,  
Vocalem primam præsents in i sibi mutant,  
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, rĕfringo rĕfrĕgi ;  
A cāpio, incīpio incĕpi. Sed pauca notentur ; 145*

*Namque suum simplex pĕrāgo sequitur, sātāgoque ;  
Atque ab āgo, dĕgo dat dĕgi, cōgō coĕgi ;  
A rĕgo, sic pergo perrexi ; vult quoque surgo  
Surrexi ; mediā præsents syllabā ademptā.*

*Composita à pango retinent a quatuor ista : 150  
Dĕpango, oppango, circumpango, atque rĕpango.*

*Nil variat fācio, nisi præposito præeunte :  
Id docet olfācio, cum calfācio, infīcioque.*

*A lĕgo nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,  
Præsents servant vocalem ; in i cætera mutant ; 155  
De quibus hæc, intelligo, dilīgo, negligo, tantum  
Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.*

#### VIII. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.  
Perfectum unum in bi, bībitum formare bībi vult. 160  
Ci fit ctum, ut vīci victum testatur, et īci  
Dans ictum, fĕci factum, jĕci quoque jactum.*

*Di fit sum, ut vīdi vīsum : quædam geminant s ;  
Ut pandi passum, sĕdi sessum, adde scīdi, quod  
Dat scissum, atque fīdi fissum, fōdi quoque fossum.*

- Syllaba non ullis geminatur prima supinis ;* 165  
*Idque tōtondi dans tonsūm docet, atque cecīdi*  
*Quod cæsum, et cecīdi quod dat casum, atque tētendi*  
*Quod tensum et tentum, tūtūdi tunsum, atque dēdi quod*  
*Jure dātum poscit ; sic quot nascuntur ab illo,*  
*Addīdi ut addītum habet ; morsum vult atque momordi*  
*Gi fit ctum, ut lēgi lectum, pēgi pēpīgique* 171  
*Dant pactum, frēgi fractum, tētīgi quoque tactum,*  
*Egi actum, pūpūgi punctum ; fūgi fūgītum dat.*  
*Li fit sum, ut pēpūli pulsum, sic rīte fēfelli*  
*Falsum ; percūli habet percūsum ; neve tūli te* 175  
*Aufugiat, semper cui lātum venit in usum.*  
*Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sumunt, velut hīc manifestum ;*  
*Emi emptum, vēni ventum, cēcīni à cāno cantum,*  
*A cāpio cēpi captum, cēpi quoque cēptum ;*  
*A rumpo rūpi ruptum, līqui quoque lictum.* 180  
*Ri fit sum, ut verri versum ; pēpēri excipe partum.*  
*Si fit sum, ut vīsi visum ; quin ss geminato,*  
*Mīsi formabit missum, fulsi excipe fultum,*  
*Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi quoque fartum,*  
*Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi sibi tortum* 185  
*Vindicat ; indulsi sic indultum tibi format.*  
*Psi fit ptum, ut scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi quoque*  
*sculptum.*  
*Ti vult sum, ut verti versum, formare ; supinum*  
*Cūm stīti habet, stātum erit, sed vix reperire valebis.*  
*Vi fit tum, ut flāvi flātum ; pāvi excipe pastum :* 190  
*Dat lāvi lōtum, interdum lautum atque lāvātum,*  
*Pōtāvi pōtum, vēnīvi à vēnēō vēnum ;*  
*Dat fāvi fautum, cāvi cautum : à sērō sēvi*  
*Formes rīte sātum, sēpēlīvi discite sēpultum,*  
*Et singultivi singultum semper habebit :* 195  
*Solvi à solvo sōlūtum, volvi à volvo vōlūtum.*  
*Quod dat ui dat itum, ut dōmūi dōmītum : excipe*  
*quodvis*  
*Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in ūtum ;*  
*Exui ut exūtum : à ruo deme rui rūtum dans :*  
*Vult sēcui sectum, nēcui nectum, frīcuīque* 200  
*Frictum, miscui item mistum, dōcui quoque doctum,*

Torruī *habet* tostum, contentum contīnuīque;  
*Adjice* consūlūi consultum, ālūi altum ālītumque;  
 Sic sālūi saltum, cōlūi occūlūi quoque cultum;  
 Pinsui *habet* pistum, rāpūi raptum, sērūique 205  
 4 sēro *vult* sertum; sic texui *habet* quoque textum.  
 Censui *habet* censum, messum quoque messui *habebit*,  
 Nexui *item* nexum, sic pexui *habet* quoque pexum.  
 Xi *fit* ctum, ut vinxi vinctum: quædam abjiciunt n:  
 Ut finxi fictum *semper dabit*, *adjice* pinxi 210  
 Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi quoque rictum:  
 Xum, flexi, plexi, fixi, *dant*; et fluo fluxum.

### IX. Of the Supines of Compound Verbs.

*Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,  
 Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.*  
 Composita à tunsum, demptā n, tusum: à ruitum *fit*.  
 I mediā demptā rūtum; et à saltum quoque sultum; 216  
 A sero, quando sātum *format*, composita sītum *dant*.  
 Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant;  
 Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, *adjice* fartum.  
 A nosco tantūm duo cognītum et agnītum *habentur*; 220  
 Cætera *dant* nōtum: nullo est jam noscītum in usu.

### X. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in Or.

*Verba in or admittunt ex posteriore supino  
 Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato  
 Vel fui; ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum  
 Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum: 225  
 Nam lābor lapsus; pātiōr dat passus, et ejus  
 Natum perpētior perpessus; dat fāteōrque  
 Fassus, confīteōr confessus; dat grādiorque  
 Gressus, dat mensus sum mētior, ūtor et ūsus.  
 Pro texo ordītus, pro incepto *habet* ordior orsus, 230  
 ūtor nīsus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus,  
 Irascor simul īratus, reor atque rātus sum,  
 Obliviscor *vult* oblitus sum, fruor optat  
 Fructus vel frūitus: mīsērēri iunge mīsertus.*

Atque -itus ; à tuor *et* tueor tūtus tuītusque ; 235  
 A lōquor *adde* lōcūtus, *et* à sēquor *adde* secūtus.

Expērior *facit* expertus ; *formare* pāciscor  
*Gaudet* pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, āpiscor,  
 Quod *vetus est verbum*, aptus sum ; *unde* ādīpiscor  
 ādeptus.

*Junge* quēror questus, prōfīciscor *junge* prōfectus, 246  
 Expergiscor sum experrectus ; *et hæc quoque*, commā-  
 niscor commentus, nascor nātus, mōriorque

Mortuus, *atque* ōrior, *quod præteritum facit* ortus.

*Perfecto* mēdeor, vescor, līquorque *carebunt*,  
*Sic quoque* diffiteor, *sic* ringor, *sic* rēmīniscor. 245

### XI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both in the Active and Passive Voice.

*Præteritum activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc :*

Nūbo nupsi nuptaque sum ; plāceo plācui *dat*  
*Et* plācītus ; libet *et* libuit libītum ; licet *adde*,  
 Quod licuit licītum ; tædet, *quod* tæduit, *et dat*  
 Pertæsum ; *adde* pūdet, *faciens* pūduit pūditumque ;  
 Atque pīget, *tibi quod format* pīguit pīgitumque. 251

### XII. Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

*Hæc rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum :*

Lambo, mīco micui, rūdo, scābo, parco pēperci,  
 Dispesco, posco, compesco, *atque adjice* disco :  
 Dēgo, ango, sūgo, lingo, ningo, sātāgoque, 255  
 Psallo, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, trēmo, strīdeo, strīdo,  
 Flāveo, līveo, āvet, pāvèo, connīveo, fervet :  
 A nuo *compositum*, *ut* renuo : à cādo, *ut* accīdo ; *præter*  
 Occīdo, *quod facit* occāsūm, rēcīdoque rēcāsūm :  
 Respuo, *sic* mētuo, luo, frīgeo, calveo, sterto, 260  
*Sic etiam* tīmeo : *sic* lūceo, *et* arceo, *cujus*  
*Composita -ercītum habent : sic* a gruo, *ut* ingruo, *nata ;*  
*Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secundæ :*  
 Excīpiās ōleo, dōleo, plāceo, tāceoque,  
 Pāreo, *item* cāreo, nōceo, jāceo, lāteoque, 265  
 Et vāleo, cāleo ; *gaudent hæc nunquam supino.*

## SYNTAXIS:

OR,

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

## CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

*Nominativus et Verbum.*

1. VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ : ut,

*Ego loquor.*

*Homines audiunt.*

2. Nominativus pronominum omittitur, nisi distinctionis aut emphasis gratiâ : ut,

*Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. Cic.*

*Auditis, an me ludit amabilis*

*Insania? Audire et videor pios*

*Errare per lucos. Hor.*

*Possunt quia posse videntur. Virg.*

3. Aliquando verbum infinitivi modi usurpatur pro nominativo vel pro accusativo casu nominis : ut,

*Ingenuas didicisse fide-liter artes*

*Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros. Ovid.*

*Quod crimen dicis, præter amâsse, meum? Ovid.*

4. Cùm duo sunt nomina diversarum personarum, verbum cum personâ digniore concordat :\* ut,

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero va-  
lemus. Cic.*

5. Cùm duo aut plura nomina singularis numeri unum verbum sequitur, plerumque in plurali ponitur, si

\* Apud Latinos prima persona dignissima est, et genus masculinum.



de *animantibus* agitur ; si de *rebus*, vel in plurali vel in singulari : ut,

*Apud Regillum Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt.* Cic.

*Cùm tempus necessitasque postulat, decertandum manu est.* Cic.

*Beneficium et gratia homines inter se conjungunt.* Cic.

6. Cùm nomen singularis numeri multitudinem indicat, verbo plurali sæpe jungitur : ut,

*Atria turba tenent, veniunt leve vulgus, euntque.* Ov.

*Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt.* Cæs.

(a) Sic et adverbium *partim* cum genitivo plurali nominis, ceu nomen ipsum, aliquando usurpatur : ut,

*Partim eorum timidi sunt, partim à republicâ aversi.* Cic.

*Partim eorum ficta aperte, partim temere effutita sunt.* Cic.

7. Verbum inter duos nominativos ejusdem personæ sed diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest, sed cum posteriore ferè concordat : ut,

*Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* Ter.

*Pectus quoque robora fiunt.* Ovid.

*Omnia pontus erant.* Ovid.

8. Verba dicendi, audiendi, sciendi, putandi, et similia, et verbum *sum* pro nominativo accusativus sequitur, verbo sequente infinitivo : ut,

*Audivit nos venire.* Cic.

*Scribit confectum esse bellum.* Cic.

*Fama est, Enceladum urgeri mole hâc.* Virg.

(a) Verba sperandi et promittendi infinitivus modus futuri temporis plerumque sequitur : ut,

*Hæc promitto me esse observaturum.* Cic.

*Spero fore ut contingat id nobis.* Cic.

## CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

### *Substantivum et Adjectivum.*

9. Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordant : ut,

*Rara avis in terris nigroque simillima cygno.* Juv.

10. Cùm verbum infinitivi modi, aut sententiæ pars pro substantivo usurpatur, neutrius generis habetur: ut,  
*Humanum est irasci.*

11. Cùm plura sunt substantiva diversorum generum, adjectivum cum digniore genere concordat, si de *animantibus* agitur, et si in numero plurali ponitur: ut,  
*Jam pridem pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.*

12. Si vero de *rebus* agitur, adjectivum sæpè in neutro genere ponitur: ut,  
*Secundæ res, honores, imperia, victoriæ, fortuita sunt.*  
Cic.

(a) Interdum adjectivum cum proximo substantivo concordat, cujuscunq̄ generis sit, præsertim cùm in singulari numero ponitur: ut,

*Animus, et consilium, et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus.* Cic.

13. Adjectivum aliquando concordat cum substantivo quod significatur, non cum eo quod exprimitur: ut,

*Thracum auxilia, (i. e. Thraces auxiliantes) cum pars (i. e. aliqui ex iis) munitionibus adjacerent, cæsi sunt.*  
Tac.

14. Aliquando nullum substantivum exprimitur, sed adjectivum pro substantivo usurpatur: ut,

*Mira loquor.* Ovid.

*Multi pro patriâ mortem libenter oppetierunt.* Cic.

## CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

### *Relativum et Antecedens.*

15. Relativum cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

*Ego sum ille consul qui Romam servavi.*

*Contemnimus hominem qui amat mendacia.*

16. Quoniam relativum adjectivum est, easdem de ære leges quas adjectivum sequitur: ut,

*Eæ fruges atque fructus quos terra gignit.* Cic.

*Duo importuna prodigia (i. e. viri prodigiosi sceleris) quos improbitas tribuno plebis constrictos addixerat.* Cic.

*Ubi est illud scelus qui me perdidit?* Ter.

17. Aliquando sententia aut pars sententiæ ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

*In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.* Ter.

18. Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, sæpè cum posteriore concordat: ut,

*Homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur.* Cic.

(a) Relativum sæpe ponitur Latine, ubi in nostro sermone pronomine cum conjunctione utimur: ut,

*Hoc si scïsses, pater, cujus (i. e. ejus enim, vel tantæ enim) pietatis es, nemo te antecessisset.* Quint.

*Et tamen in cælo, quæ (i. e. tanta enim) jam patientia nostra est,*

*Spernimur.* Ovid.

*Pater tuus si viveret, quâ severitate (i. e. tantâ enim) fuit, tu profecto non viveres.* Cic.

*Hoc jussit, quod (i. e. sed illud) si fecissem, omnia perdidissem.*

19. Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

*Vestrâ, qui cum summâ integritate vixistis, hoc maxime interest.* Cic.

(a) Relativum, cùm ad nomen multitudinis refertur, aliquando in plurali ponitur: ut,

*Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.* Cæs.

20. Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

*Te peto quem merui.* Ovid.

*Cujus numen adoro.*

(a) Cùm relativum superlativo adjungitur, superlativum in eodem sententiæ membro quo relativum ponitur : ut,  
*Themistocles servum quem fidelissimum habuit ad Xerxem misit.* Cor. Nep.

## NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### SUBSTANTIVA.

21. Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur : ut,

*Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.* Ovid.

22. Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur : ut,

*Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit.* Juv.

23. Adjectivum in neutro genere pro substantivo positum, genitivum postulat : ut,

*Hoc ad te literarum dedi.* Cic.

*Ad ultimum inopiæ venerant.* Liv.

*Ferimur per opaca locorum.* Virg.

24. Ponitur interdum genitivus tantùm, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito : ut,

*Ventum erat ad Vestæ,* (i. e. *ad templum Vestæ.*) Hor.

*Hasdrubal Gisgonis,* (i. e. *Gisgonis filius.*) Liv.

25. Substantivum qualitatem denotans, adjuncto adjectivo, in genitivo vel in ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Titus facilitatis tantæ fuit, ut nemini quicquam negaret.*

Eutr.

*Agesilaus staturâ fuit humili et corpore exiguo.*

Corn. Nep.

(a) Substantiva à verbis derivata interdum eosdem casus post se admittunt, quos verba à quibus derivantur exigunt : ut,

*Domum reditionis spe sublatâ.* Cæs.

*Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus.* Cic.

26. *Opus* et *usus* ablativum rei, cum dativo personæ, exigunt : ut,

*Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est.* Cic.

*Pecuniam quâ nihil sibi esset usus ab iis non accepit.*  
Gell.

(a) *Opus* autem adjective, pro *necessarius*, aliquando poni videtur: ut,

*Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* Cic.

## ADJECTIVA.

### *Genitivus post Adjectivum.*

27. Adjectiva, vel participia pro adjectivis posita, quæ cupidinem, scientiam, memoriam, timorem, diligentiam, participationem, atque iis contraria, significant, cum plurimis aliis quæ qualitatem vel motum aliquem animi denotant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Pythagoras sapientiæ studiosos appellavit philosophos.*  
Cic.

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendacia ridet.* Ovid.

*Venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ.* Ovid.

*Nescia mens hominum fati sortisque futuræ.* Virg.

*Romani appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras gentes fuerunt.* Cic.

*Serpit humi tutus nimium timidusque procellæ.* Hor.

*Vir omnis officii diligentissimus.* Cic.

*Cæteræ habere domi fortunarum omnium participem possunt.* Cic.

*Sæpe potens voti redit anus.* Ovid.

(a) Ex his *particeps* interdum dativo personæ jungitur: ut,  
*Mater in plerisque ruris operibus marito particeps.* Quint.

(b) *Conscius* genitivum rei, dativum personæ, postulat; interdum etiam dativo rei jungitur, personâ subauditâ: ut,

*Conscius sibi tanti sceleris.* Sall.

*Huic facinori tanto (i. e. illi quæ hoc facinus admiserit) mens tua conscia esse non debuit.* Cic.

28. Adjectiva quæ copiam egestatemve significant, genitivum, interdum etiam ablativum, exigunt: ut,

*Dives equum, dives pictæ vestis et auri.* Virg.

*Dives agris, dives positus in fœnore nummis.* Hor.

*Opis non indiga nostræ.* Virg.

*Plena errorum sunt omnia.* Cic.

*Utriusque harum rerum humanus animus est expers*  
Cic

29. Adjectiva quæ liberalitatem vel contrarium significant, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Liberalis pecuniæ.* Sall.

*Veteris non parcus aceti.* Hor.

30. *Proprius, superstes, communis*, cum paucis aliis, genitivum, interdum etiam dativum, admittunt: ut,

*Populi Romani propria est libertas.*

*Aliorum superstites sumus.* Tac.

*Hoc commune est potentiae cupidorum cum otiosis.* Cic.

*Omni ætati mors est communis.*

*Pomponius Tiberio superstes fuit.* Tac.

(a.) *Communis* verò pronomini personali nunquam nisi in dativo jungitur: ut,

*Hoc mihi tecum commune est.*

31. *Alienus* genitivo, vel dativo, vel ablativo, vel ablativo cum præpositione, jungitur: ut,

*Hoc alienum esse suæ dignitatis censet.* Cic.

*Alienus ambitioni.* Sen.

*Fraus homine alienissima est.* Cic.

*Non alienus à Scævolaë studiis.* Cic.

32. Adjectiva quæ crimen vel contrarium significant, genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Regulus collegam, ut noxium conjurationis, ad disquisitionem trahebat.* Tac.

*Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus.* Hor.

33. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Tempus edax rerum.*

34. Adjectiva partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa, et adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum exigunt: ut,

*Utrum horum mavis accipe.*

*Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romulus.*

*Manuum fortior est dextra.*

*Digitorum medius est longissimus.*

*Sequimur te, sancte Deorum.* Virg.

(a) Usurpantur et cum his præpositionibus, *de, ex, in, inter* :  
ut,

*Nam Deus è vobis alter es, alter eris.* Ovid.

*Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.* Cic.

*Solus de superis qui tua terga vides.* Ovid.

*Inter mille rates tua sit millesima puppis.* Ovid.

### *Dativus post Adjectivum.*

35. Adjectiva, quibus commodum, similitudo, aut iis similia vel contraria, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

*Si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.* Juv.

*Turba gravis paci placidæque inimica quieti.* Mart.

*Patri similis.* Cic.

*Virtus fructuosa aliis, ipsi laboriosa.* Cic.

*Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo.* Ovid

*Socrates iudiciis non supplex fuit.* Cic.

*Dîs carus ipsis.* Hor.

*Est finitimus oratori poeta.*

(a) Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, et adjectivum *affinis*, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

*Qui mortem leviolem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse.* Cic.

*Affinis hujus culpæ.* Cic.

36. *Natus, habilis, commodus, utilis, aptus*, cum quibusdam aliis, etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: ut,

*Natus ad gloriam.* Cic.

*Utilis ad eam rem.*

37. Adjectiva verbalia in *bilis*, accepta passivè, dativum postulant: ut,

*Nulli penetrabilis astro*

*Lucus iners.* Stat.

38. Participia passivæ vocis dativum, vel ablativum cum præpositione, postulant: ut,

*Primâ dicte mihi, summâ dicende Camæná,  
Mæcenâs.* Hor.

*Senex sapiens ab Apolline dictus.*

*Accusativus post Adjectivum.*

39. Adjectiva magnitudinem significantia, accusativum exigunt: ut,

*Fossa undecim pedes lata.* Cic.

40. *Natus*, cùm ad temporis durationem refertur, accusativum exigit: ut,

*Undeviginti annos natus.* Cic.

41. Accusativus a poetis sæpe subjicitur adjectivis et participiis passivæ vocis, præsertim cùm pars affecta indicatur: ut,

*Os humerosque Deo similis.* Virg.

[*Flores*] *inscripti nomina regum.* Virg.

*Stratus nunc viridi membra sub arbuto.* Hor.

42. Accusativus sæpe in exclamationibus usurpatur, interjectione aliquâ, a quâ reverà regitur, subauditâ: ut,

*Me cæcum* (i. e. *O me cæcum*) *qui hæc ante non viderim!* Cic. [Vide infra, Reg. 154.]

*Ablativus post Adjectivum.*

43. Adjectiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, aut formam, aut modum rei: ut,

*Scelere par est illi, industriâ inferior.* Cic.

*Trojanus origine Cæsar.* Virg.

44. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, cum adjectivis pretium significantibus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

*Dignus es odio.* Ter.

*Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.* Cic.

*Sorte tuâ contentus abi.*

*Extorris agro Romano.* Sall.



*Otium gemmis venale nec auro.*

*Quod non opus est, asse carum est.* Sen.

(a.) Horum nonnulla poeticè interdum genitivum admittunt : ut,

*Magnorum indignus avorum.* Virg.

(b.) *Fretus* interdum, sed raro, dativo jungitur : ut,

*Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit.* Liv.

45. *Natus, satus, cretus*, et similia sine præpositione ; *ortus, editus*, vel cum vel sine præpositione ; ablativum exi<sup>r</sup>, ar<sup>c</sup>. u<sup>i</sup>,

*Nate Deâ.* Virg.

*Sate sanguine Divûm.* Virg.

*Hortamur fari quo sanguine cretus.* Virg.

*Anchisâ generate, Deâm certissima proles.* Virg.

*Venus, orta mari, mare præstat eunti.* Ovid.

*Te contenta marito,*

*Edita de magno flumine nympha fui.* Ovid.

46. Comparativis subjicitur ablativus rei ad quam comparatio fiat, vel utraque res comparata in eodem casu ponitur, interpositâ conjunctione *quàm* : ut,

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* Hor.

*Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quàm sperata victoria.* Liv.

(a.) Cùm duo adjectiva vel adverbia inter se comparantur, et per *quàm* conjunguntur, in comparativo ambo ferè ponuntur : ut,

*Publii Æmilii concio fuit verior quàm gratior populo.* Liv.

*Non timeo ne libentius hæc in illum evomere videar quàm verius.* Cic.

(b.) Post *minus, plus, amplius, et longius, quàm* interdum omittitur, nihilominus substantivum quod sequitur non in ablativo ponitur : ut,

*Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis.* Liv.

*Cùm plus annum æger fuisset.* Liv.

*Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hybernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs.

(c.) Aliquando subjiciuntur comparativis *quàm pro* cum substantivo, *quàm qui* vel *quàm ut* cum verbo : ut,

*Prælium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur.* Liv.

*Major sum quàm cui possit fortuna nocere.* Ovid.  
*Flumen latius erat quàm ut tranare possent.*

## PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

47. *Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur: ut,  
*Languet desiderio tui.*  
*Parsque tui lateat corpore clausa meo.* Ov.  
*Imago nostri.*

48. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, ponuntur cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,  
*Favet desiderio tuo.*  
*Imago nostra, (i. e. quam nos possidemus.)*

49. Pronomina possessiva hos genitivos post se interdum recipiunt, *ipsius, solius, unius, omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,  
*Dixi meâ unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam.* Cic.  
*Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.*

*Cùm mea nemo*

*Scripta legat, vulgo recitare timentis.* Hor.  
*De tuo ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis.* Cic.  
*In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.*  
*Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.*

*Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus.* Cic.

50. *Sui et suus* reciproca sunt, id est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit: ut,  
*Sentit animus se vi suâ non alienâ moveri.* Cic.  
*Oravit me pater, ut ad se venirem.* Cic.

51. Hæc demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille, is*, fere sic distinguuntur; *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste*, eum qui apud te est; *ille*, eum qui ab utroque remotus est; *is*, eum de quo mentio fit.

52. Quum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius, refertur: ut,

*Cæsar munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato: Ille mansuetudine clarus factus; huic severitas dignitatem addiderat.* Sall.

(a.) Nonnunquam vero *hic et ille* mutatas vices habent: ut, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in Deorum potestate est.* Liv.

53. *Idem* copulativam vim sæpe habet: ut, *Nil liberale est quod non idem justum.* Cic.

*Operam in res obscuras conferunt, easdemque non necessarias.* Cic.

## VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

### *Nominativus post Verbum.*

54. Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo*; verba vocandi passiva, ut *nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor*, et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eodem casus habent: ut,

*Deus est mundi Creator.*

*Natura beatis*

*Omnibus esse dedit.*

*Ex nitido fit rusticus.* Hor.

*Opiferque per orbem*

*Dicor.* Ovid.

*Da mihi fallere, da justo sanctoque videri.* Hor.

(a.) Item omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

*Pii orant taciti.*

*Malus pastor dormit supinus.*

### *Genitivus post Verbum.*

55. *Sum et fio* genitivum postulant, quoties significant possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

*Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.* Cic.

*Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt.* Liv.

56. Verba accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis vel pœnæ exigunt, accusativum personæ: ut,

*Alterum ambitus accusat. Cic.*

*Proditionis eum insimulabant. Cæs.*

*Octupli damnatus est. Cic.*

57. Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, interdum (cùm de crimine agitur) cum præpositione *de*: ut,

*Si in me iniquus es judex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. Cic.*

*Non ob eam rem capite damnarer. Cic.*

*Licinium de aleâ condemnatum restituit. Cic.*

(a.) *Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et adjectiva superlativa, non nisi in ablativo hujusmodi verbis junguntur: ut,

*Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque.*

*De plurimis simul accusaris.*

58. Verba miserendi genitivum postulant, præter miseror, qui soli accusativo jungitur: ut,

*Oro miserere laborum*

*Tantium, miserere animi non digna ferentis. Virg.*

*O sola infandos Trojæ miserata labores. Virg.*

59. Verba reminiscendi et obliviscendi genitivum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

*Proprium est stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Cic.*

*Nec veterum meminisse lætorve malorum. Virg.*

*Flagitiorum suorum recordabitur. Cic.*

*Tu, C. Cæsar, oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias. Cic.*

*Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Virg.*

*Si ritè audita recordor. Virg.*

60. Verba admonendi genitivum rei exigunt, accusativum personæ; interdum ablativum rei cum præpositione *de*; interdum geminum accusativum: ut,

*Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ. Sall.*

*Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum.* Cic.

*Unoquoque gradu de avaritiâ tuâ commonemur.* Cic.

*Illud me præclarè admones.* Cic.

61. *Potior* aut genitivo aut ablativo jungitur : ut,

*Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.* Sall.

*Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troës arenâ.* Virg.

*Dativus post Verbum.*

62. Omnia ferè verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cujus causâ aliquid fit, aut in quam actio refertur : ut,

*Sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners.* Ovid.

*Laomedonti magna facta est injuria.* Cic.

*Pisistratus sibi non patriæ Megurenses vicit.* Cic.

*Hoc omnibus patet.* Cic.

*Quid voveat dulci nutricula majus alumno?* Juv.

*Appius mihi blanditur.* Cic.

*Civitas Romana parum olim vacabat liberalibus studiis.* Cic.

*Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.*  
Virg.

*Consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ.* Cic.

*Medici timent ægris vini noxam.* Plin.

(a.) Sed *delecto, juvo, lædo*, accusativum exigunt : ut,

*Non omnes arbusta juvant.* Virg.

63. Verba comparandi regunt dativum ; interdum etiam accusativum vel ablativum, cum præpositionibus *inter* vel *cum* : ut,

*Sic parvis componere magna solebam.* Virg.

*Hominem cum homine, rem cum re comparate* Cic.

*Partes honestatis inter se comparemus.* Cic.

64. Verba dandi, reddendi, et contraria, regunt dativum : ut,

*Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.* Mart.

*Quis te mihi casus ademit?* Ovid.

*Æs alienum mihi numeravit.* Cic.

65. Verba appropinquandi, adjungendi, et iis contraria, dativum exigunt: ut,

*Nescit equo rudis hærere ingenuus puer.* Hor.

*Forti miscebat mella Falerno.* Hor.

*Currui jungit equos.* Virg.

*Paulum sepultæ distat inertiae*

*Celata virtus: Eripe te moræ.* Hor.

(a.) Quædam ex his composita cum præpositione *ad* accusativum cum *ad* admittunt; et interdum verba amovendi et distandi ablativum cum præpositione, vel (apud poetas) sine præpositione, admittunt: ut,

*Hi ad summam aquam appropinquant.* Cic.

*Seston Abydenâ separat urbe fretum.* Ovid.

*A malis igitur mors nos abducit, non à bonis.* Cic.

*Quantum distet ab Inacho Codrus narras.* Hor.

66. Verba imperandi, parendi, resistendi, et dicendi, regunt dativum: ut,

*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.* Hor.

*Dic mihi, quid feci?* Ovid.

*Quæ tibi promitto me sanctissimè esse observaturum.*

Cic.

*Tempore paret equus lentis animosus habenis.* Ovid.

*Omnibus ejus dictis repugnavi.*

(a.) Excipe *rego, guberno, jubeo*, quæ accusativum; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ vel dativum vel accusativum admittunt: ut,

*Fortem hoc animum tolerare jubebo.*

*Ille regit dictis animos.* Virg.

*Te hortor, ut omnia gubernes prudentiâ tuâ.* Cic.

*Sit censor, qui viros doceat moderari uxoribus.* Cic.

*Non voluptate sed officio consilia moderari decet.* Cic.

*Æolus ventorum temperat iras.* Virg.

*Vix temperavere animis.* Liv.

67. Verba irascendi regunt dativum: Verba condonandi dativum personæ, accusativum culpæ, si ambe exprimuntur; si alterum tantùm, dativum: Verba minandi dativum personæ, accusativum rei: ut,

*Adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam.* Ter.

*Homines omnia sibi ignoscunt.* Sall.

*Utrique mortem est minitatus.* Cic.

68. Verba fidendi et iis contraria dativum exigunt: ut,  
*Vacuis committere venis nil nisi lene decet.* Hor.  
*Diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum.* Cic.

(a.) Interdum vero verba fidendi ablativo junguntur: ut,  
*Fortunæ stabilitate confidit.* Cic.

69. Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, *benè, malè, satis*; et cum his præpositionibus, *ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re*: ut,

*Dii tibi benefaciant.* Ter.

*Concionanti circumfundebatur multitudo.* Liv.

*Judices sibi constare, et superioribus convenire judiciis debuerant.* Cic.

*Campus interjacens Tiberi et mœnibus Romanis.* Liv.

*Omnibus ejus consiliis obstiti.* Cic.

*Vos est postponere natis*

*Ausa suis.* Ovid.

*Brutum copiis præfecit.* Cic.

*Ora ipsa oculis proponite.* Cic.

*Magnitudine animi potest repugnari fortunæ.* Cic.

*Superfuit patri.* Liv.

(a) Nonnulla tamen ex his accusativum interdum regunt: ut,

*Præstat ingenio alius alium.* Quint.

*Beatum est post mortem convenire eos, qui justè et cum fide vixerint.* Cic.

70. Passivis verbis subjicitur interdum dativus agentis, interdum ablativus cum præpositione, (*Vid. Reg. 78*): ut,

*Hoc in laboribus viventi non intelligitur.* Cic.

*Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.* Hor.

71. *Sum*, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum, alterum personæ, alterum rei: ut,

*Exitio est avidis mare nautis.* Hor.

*Quinque cohortes castris præsidio reliquit.* Cæs.

*Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.* Cæs.

*Accusativus post Verbum.*

72. Verba transitiva exigunt accusativum: ut,  
*Arma virumque cano.* Virg.

*Mortem non deprecor, inquit.* Virg.

73. Verba neutralia sæpe accusativum cognatæ significationis post se habent: ut,

*Duram servit servitutum.*

*Nec vox hominem sonat; O Dea, certè.* Virg.

(a.) Verba neutralia aliquando etiam accusativum regunt ejus rei, quæ causam significat: ut,

*Id tibi succenseo.* Cic.

74. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, cogendi, sæpe duplicem regunt accusativum: ut,

*Tu modò posce Deos veniam.* Virg.

*Ea ne me celet consuefecit filium.* Ter.

*Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam?* Cic.

*Quid non mortalia pectora cogis*

*Auri sacra fames?* Virg.

(a.) Sæpe etiam verba docendi per ellipsin ablativum admittunt: ut,

*Socratem fidibus docuit nobilissimus fidicen* (i. e. *fidibus ludere.*) Cic.

75. Quædam etiam verba motûs cum præpositionibus *ad*, *trans*, *circum*, *præter*, composita, duplicem regunt accusativum, quorum alter ad præpositionem refertur: ut,

*Iberum copias trajecit.* Liv.

*Idem jusjurandum adigit Afranium.* Cæs.

76. Verba quæ activâ voce duplicem regunt accusativum, et verba vestiendi, etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent: ut,

*Posceris exta bovis.*

*Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur.* Cæs.

*Induiturque aures lentè gradientis asell.* Ovid.

*Ablativus post Verbum.*

77. Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum, significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis: ut,



*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* Virg.  
*Miltiades summâ æquitate res Chersonesi constituit.*  
 Corn. Nep.

*Victoriâ suâ gloriantur.* Cæs.

*Lacte vivunt.* Cæs.

*Lepōre omnibus præstitit.* Cic.

*Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere, nos oportet.* Cic.

*Frumentum flumine Arari navibus subvexerat.* Cæs.

78. Cùm nomen agentis sequitur verbum, in ablativo cum præpositione ponitur (*Vid. Reg. 70*): ut,  
*Pompeius à Cæsare victus est.*

79. Verbis emendi, vendendi, æstimandi, plerumquæ subjicitur ablativus pretii: ut,

*Multo sanguine Pænis victoria stetit.* Liv.

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.*

Plin.

(a.) Interdum subjicitur genitivus, voce *pretio* subauditâ: ut,  
*Nequicquam iis pensi est quid faciant.* Liv.

*Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt.* Cic.

(b.) *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, plurimi*, cum paucis similibus, post hæc verba sæpe usurpantur: ut,

*Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.* Cic.

*Hephæstionem Alexander plurimi fecerat.*

80. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his contraria, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Amore abundas, Antipho.* Ter.

*Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.* Sall.

*Te quibus mendaciis homines levissimi onerârunt?* Cic.

*Vela queror reditu, verba carere fide.* Ov.

*Pane egeo.* Hor.

(a.) Sæpè etiam verba egendi et implendi genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinæ.* Virg.

*Non tam artis indigent quàm laboris.* Cic.

81. Verba abstinendi atque arcendi regunt ablativum, interdum cum præpositione, quæ quidem ante *personam* semper usurpatur: ut,

*L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.* Cic.

*Te à quartaná liberatum gaudeo.* Cic.

*Apud veteres Romanos quemcunque mortalium arcere tecto nefas habebatur.* Tac.

*Tu Jupiter hunc à tuis aris, à tectis urbis arcebis.* Cic.

(a.) Apud poetas (ad usum Græcorum) verba abstinendi aliquando genitivum admittunt: ut,

*Abstineto,*

*Dixit, irarum calidæque rixæ.* Hor.

*Desine mollium*

*Tandem querelarum.* Hor.

82. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, et composita, et supersedeo, ablativo junguntur: ut,*

*Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis.* Cic.

*Hannibal, cum victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.* Flor.

*Quid puer Ascanius, superatne et vescitur aurâ?* Virg.

*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.* Virg.

*Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata rotundis.* Hor.

*Verborum multitudine supersedendum est.* Cic.

83. *Pascor et nitor ablativo, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,*

*Floribus et victu pascuntur simplicis herbæ.* Virg.

*Pascitur in vivis Livor.* Ov.

*Purâ juvenis qui nititur hastâ.* Virg.

*In vitâ Pompeii nitebatur salus civitatis.* Cic.

84. Ablativus absolutus dicitur quoties substantivum in ablativo cum participio construitur, vel adjectivo, (interdum etiam cum alio substantivo,) ut tempus vel modum, vel aliam rem comitantem, denotet: ut,

*Archilochus regnante Romulo floruit.* Cic.

*Nihil de hâc re agi potest salvis legibus.* Cic.

*Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset.* Cæs.

*Me duce, tutus eris.* Ov.

85. Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poeticè accusativus: ut,

*Micat auribus et tremit artus.* Virg.

(a.) Quædam usurpantur, (ad usum Græcorum, sed rarissimè) etiam cum genitivo: ut,

*Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi.* Plaut.

86. *Exsulo* ablativum, *veneo* ablativum cum præpositione, *vapulo* ablativum, vel sine præpositione vel cum præpositione, admittit: ut,

*Mente tamen, quæ sola loco non exsulat, utar.* Ov.

*Respondit se malle à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.* Quint.

*Testis rogatus est an ab reo fustibus vapulasset.* Quint.

*Omniū sermonibus se sentiet vapulare.* Cic.

## VERBA INFINITA.

87. Verbis quibusdam, et participiis et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita: ut,

*Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor.* Ov.

*Jussus confundere fædus.* Virg.

*Erat tum dignus amari.* Virg.

88. Verba rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, et contraria, raro (nisi apud poetas) infinitivum post se habent, plerumque vero conjunctionem cum subjunctivo, (*Vid. Reg. 133*): ut,

*Reg. 133*): ut,

*Illud te oro et hortor, ut in munere tuo diligentissimus sis.* Cic.

*Moneo obtestorque, ne hos, qui tibi genere propinqui sunt, negligas.* Cic.

*Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis ædificaretur.*  
Corn. Nep.

(a.) Ex his vero *jubeo* et *veto* etiam in pedestri sermone infinitivo sæpius junguntur: ut,

*Hannibal Tarentinos sine armis convocari jussit.* Liv.

89. Verba efficiendi conjunctio cum subjunctivo semper sequitur: ut,

*Tu, quicquid indagaris de republicâ, facito ut sciam.*  
Cic.

90. Verba accidendi et similia conjunctio cum subjunctivo plerumque sequitur: ut,

*Persæpe evenit ut utilitas cum honestate certet.* Cic.  
*Amicis quoniam satisfeci, reliquum est ut eam mihi consulam.* Corn. Nep.

(a.) Sed *contingit* infinitivus sæpe sequitur: ut,  
*Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* Hor.

91. Verba permittendi, optandi, cogendi, vel infinitivum, vel *ut* cum subjunctivo, admittunt (*Vid. Reg. 133*): ut,

*Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur.* Cic.  
*Natura non patitur ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes augeamus.* Cic.

*Permittes ipsis expendere numinibus, quid Conveniat nobis.* Juv.

92. *Oportet* et *necesse est* interdum infinitivum, sæpius subjunctivum, post se habent: ut,

*Valeat possessor oportet.* Hor.

*Tanquam ita fieri non solum oporteret, sed etiam necesse esset.* Cic.

*Corpus mortale intereat necesse est.*

93. Post verba orandi, imperandi, vel volendi, *ut* sæpe omittitur, verbum tamen in subjunctivo ponitur: ut,

*Te pro amore nostro rogo atque oro, te colligas virumque præbeas.* Cic.

*Postero die rex edixit omnes armati coirent.* Q. Curt.  
*Vellem Dî immortales fecissent ut vivo Ser. Sulpicio gratias ageremus.* Cic.

*Malo te sapiens hostis metuat, quàm stulti cives laudent.* Liv.

(a.) Sic post *cave* sæpe omittitur *ne*: ut,  
*Cave existimes me abjecisse curam reipublicæ.* Cic.

94. Ponuntur interdum sola per ellipsin verba infinita: ut,

*Hinc spargere voces*  
*In vulgum ambiguas, et quærere conscius arma.* Virg.  
 (Hic subauditur *incipiebat*.)

## GERUNDIA.

95. Gerundia in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent à substantivis vel ab adjectivis, nunquam à verbis : ut,

*Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi.* Virg.

*Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi.* Virg.

96. Gerundia in *do* eandem cum dativis et ablativi constructionem habent : ut,

*Illud ediscendo scribendoque commune est.* Quinct.

*Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo.* Virg.

(a.) Præpositio *sine* nunquam cum gerundiis in *do* usurpatur. (Vid. Reg. 132.)

97. Gerundia in *dum* eandem cum accusativis constructionem habent, sed præpositionem præcedentem semper exigunt : ut,

*Locus ad agendum amplissimus.* Cic.

*Mores puerorum se inter ludendum simplicius detegunt.* Quinct.

98. Si verbum accusativum regit, gerundivum sæpius usurpatur quàm gerundium : ut,

*Timotheus peritus fuit civitatis regendæ.* Corn. Nep.

*Ad accusandos homines duci præmio, proximum latrocinio est.*

(a.) Usurpantur eodem modo *utor, fruor, fungor, potior* : ut,  
*Justitiæ fruendæ causâ videntur olim bene morati rege constituti.* Cic.

*Omnia bona ei utenda tradiderat.* Cic.

99. Gerundivum in nominativo (et in accusativo, cùm verbum infinitivi modi adjungitur, vel subauditur) necessitatem, vel officium, vel possibilitatem indicat : ut,

*Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.* Juv.

*Diligentia præcipuè colenda est nobis, et semper adhibenda.* Cic.

*Eos à se observandos et colendos putabat.* Cic.

## SUPINA.

100. Supinum in *um* activam significationem habet, et sequitur verbum significans motum ad locum: ut,  
*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.* Ov.

101. Supinum in *u* passivam significationem habet, et sequitur adjectiva: ut,  
*Quod factu fædum est, idem est et dictu turpe.*

## VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

102. Verba quæ nominativum non habent, neque ultra tertiam personam singularem et infinitivum inflectuntur, impersonalia dicuntur: ut,

*Hinc tonat, hinc missis abrumpitur ignibus æther.* Ov.

103. Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; et his ablativis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*: ut,

*Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.*

*Tuâ refert teipsum nôsse.*

(a.) Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris*, et similia: ut,

*Tanti refert honesta agere.*

104. Verba impersonalia casus pro sensu regunt, more aliorum verborum: ut,

*Oratorem irasci minimè decet.* Cic.

*Licuit Themistocli esse otioso.* Cic.

105. His verbis *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*: ut,

*Me vis dicere quod ad te attinet?* Ter.

106. *Decet, attinet, et spectat*, quamvis impersonalia dicuntur, nominativum sæpe habent, et in tertiâ personâ plurali sæpe inveniuntur: ut,

*Candida pax homines, trux decet ira feras.* Ovid.

*Quæ nihil attinent.* Ter.

*Êa non ad religionem spectant.* Cic.

107. His impersonalibus, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget*, subjicitur accusativus personæ, cum genitivo rei: ut,

*Malo me fortunæ pœniteat quàm victoriæ pudeat.*

Curt.

*Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.*

*Eorum nos miseret.* Cic.

*Si non pertæsum thalami tædæque fuisset.* Virg.

(a.) Interdum res exprimitur, vel verbo infinitivi modi, vel conjunctione *quòd* et verbo: ut,

*Non me pudet fateri nescire quòd nesciam.* Cic.

*Pœnitet me quòd te offendi.* Cic.

108. Pleraque passiva verba in impersonalia verti possunt in tertiâ personâ singulari, et dativum agentis vel ablativum cum præpositione post se admittunt (qui vero sæpius subauditur.) eum vero casum objecti quem verbum activum regit: ut,

*Quo ruitis, generosa domus? Malè creditur hosti.*

Ovid.

*In alium quendam locum ex his locis morte migratur.*

Cic.

## DE TEMPORE.

109. Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.* Plin.

110. Quæ durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ponuntur: ut,

*Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.* Virg.

(a.) Interdum cùm ætas hominis significatur, genitivus usurpatur: ut,

*Hamilcar secum in Hispaniam duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.* Corn. Nep.

(b.) Interdum, sed perrarè, duratio temporis per ablativum significatur: ut,

*Triginta annis vixit Panætius, posteaquam libros de officiis ediderat.* Cic.

## SPATIUM LOCI.

111. Spatium loci in accusativo ponitur, cùm motus significatur; in ablativo, cùm statio: ut,

*Jam mille passus processeram.* Liv.

*Millibus passuum sex à Cæsaris castris concedit.* Cæs.

(a.) Interdum vero accusativus usurpatur etiam cùm statio significatur: ut,

*Mille ferè et quingentos passus castra ab urbe locat.* Liv.

*Dicimus etiam abest bidui, ubi subauditur itinere, vel iter.*

## NOMINA LOCORUM.

112. Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit: ut,

*Quid Romæ faciam?* Juv.

(a.) Hi genitivi, *domi, humi, militiæ, belli*, nominum priorum sequuntur formam: ut,

*Præterea, quibuscunque rebus vel belli vel domi poterunt, rempublicam augeant.* Cic.

*Procumbit humi bos.* Virg.

*Unà semper militiæ et domi fuimus.* Ter.

113. Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

*Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis.* Hor.

*Romæ Tibur amo, ventosus, Tibure Romam.* Hor.

114. Verbis significantibus motum *ad locum* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

*Atque aliquis, Doctas jam nunc eat, inquit, Athenas.*  
Ovid.

(a.) Hanc constructionem sequuntur *domus* et *rus*: ut,  
*Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite capellæ.* Virg.  
*Ego rus ibo.*

115. Verbis significantibus motum *à loco* additur nomen oppidi vel insulæ in ablativo sine præpositione: ut,  
*Nisi ante Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.*



(a.) Ferrarò post verba motûs præpositiones ante nomina urbium inveniuntur: ut,

*Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam.* Cic.

*Segesta ab Æneâ fugiente à Trojâ condita est.* Cic.

(b.) Interdum etiam regionum nomina post verba motûs in accusativo vel ablativo pro sensu ponuntur, sine præpositione: ut,

*Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur.* Tac.

*Dein Piso abire Syriâ statuit.* Tac.

(c.) Apud poetas quodvis substantivum quod verbum motûs ad locum sequitur, in accusativo interdum ponitur: ut,

*Speluncam Dido dux et Trojanus eandem*

*Deveniunt.* Virg.

*Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras.* Ovid.

## ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

116. ADVERBIA loci, *ubi, ubique, ubicunque, usquam, nusquam, huc, eo, quo,* et cætera, interdum genitivos *terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum,* et, cùm gradum significant, alios genitivos post se habent: ut,

*Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, ad communem libertatis causam pertinet.* Cic.

*Nescire videmini quo amentia progressi sitis.* Liv.

*Eo miseriarum venturus eram.* Sall.

(a.) Sic post *tum, tunc,* genitivus *temporis* aliquando occurrit, sed non apud optimos auctores: ut,

*Nihil tunc temporis amplius quàm flere poteram.*

117. *Pridie* et *postridie* genitivum *diei,* et accusativum partium mensis, vel nominum festorum, post se admittunt: ut,

*Pridie ejus diei venit in Senatum.*

*Pridie calendas abiit.*

118. Adverbia quantitatis genitivum admittunt: ut,  
*Satis eloquentia, sapientia parum.* Sall.

119. Quædam adverbia casus eosdem admittunt qui à vocibus, à quibus derivantur, exiguntur: ut,

*Sulpicius Gallus omnium nobilium maximè Græcis literis studuit.* Cic.

*Exercitum habuit quàm proximè hostem.* Cic.

120. *Ergo* genitivum post se habet: ut,  
*Donari virtutis ergo benevolentiaeque.* Cic.

121. *Procul* ablativo interdum jungitur: ut,  
*Multi suam rem benè gessere et publicum patriâ procul.* Cic.

(a.) Apud poetas et serioris ævi scriptores, *clam*, *palam*, et *inul* ablativo junguntur; et aliquando *usque* cum accusativo vel ablativo: ut,

*Clam uxore meâ et filio.* Ter.

*Simul his te, candide Furni.....dicere possum.* Hor.

*Corpora usque pedes carbaso velabant.* Curt.

### CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt: ut,  
*Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.*  
*Nec scribit nec legit.*

*Occidit,*

*Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili.* Hor.

(a.) Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat: ut,  
*Emi librum centussi et pluris.*  
*Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.*

123. Pro *quàm* post comparativum poetæ interdum usurpant *atque*: ut,  
*Arctius atque hederæ procera astringitur ilex.* Hor.

124. Cùm comparatio significatur, sæpe usurpatur *tam*, respondente *quàm*: ut,  
*Veliem tam domestica ferre possem quàm ista contemnere.* Cic.

125. Cùm significatur aliquid maximum esse quod fieri potest, sæpè usurpatur superlativus præcedente *quàm*, interdum *quàm possum*: ut,

*Mihi nihil fuit optabilius quàm ut quàm gratissimè erga te esse cognoscerer.* Cic.

*Cæsar ad hostem quàm maximis potuit itineribus contendit.* Cæs.

(a.) Pro *quàm* ante superlativum *maximus*, *quantus* aliquando usurpatur : ut,

*Hannibal quantam maximam vastitatem potest cædibus incendiisque efficit.* Liv.

126. *Donec*, *quoad*, et *dum*, cùm ad tempus refertur, indicativum modum plerumque exigunt, subjunctivum rarius : ut,

*Priami dum regna manebant.* Virg.

*Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est.*

Cic.

*Donec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit.* Liv.

*Haud desinam donec perfecero.* Ter.

*Tertia dum regnantem viderit ætas.* Virg.

*Expectas fortasse dum hæc dicat.* Cic.

127. *Dummodo*, et *dum*, vel *modo* pro *dummodo* usurpata, soli subjunctivo junguntur : ut,

*Omnia postposui dummodo præceptis patris pârêrem.*

Cic.

*Oderint dum metuant.* Cic.

*Manent ingenia senibus modo permaneat studium et industria.* Cic.

128. *Quum*,\* causam significans, vel connectionem aliquam duarum sententiarum denotans, subjunctivo jungitur ; si usurpetur pro *quòd*, indicativo : ut,

*Druentia, quum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est.* Liv.

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metûs plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare.* Cic.

*Præclare facis quum Luculli memoriam tenes.* Cic.

129. *Quum*, sequente *tum*, interdum subjunctivo, sæpius indicativo jungitur : ut,

*Quum multæ res in philosophiâ nequicquam satis explicatæ sint, tum perdifficilis quæstio est de naturâ Deorum.* Cic.

---

\* *Quum* sæpe scribitur *cùm*.

*Quum cognitionem juris augurii consequi cupio, tum meherculè tuis incredibiliter studiis delector.* Cic.

130. *Quum*, tempus significans, interdum indicativo, interdum subjunctivo, jungitur : ut,

*Qui non propulsat injuriam à suis, quum potest, injustè facit.* Cic.

*Ad Hannibalem quum ad lacum Averni esset, quinque nobiles juvenes venerunt.* Liv.

*Erit illud profectò tempus, quum gravissimi hominis fidem desideres.* Cic.

131. *Antequam* et *priusquam* subjunctivo junguntur si res in dubio est, vel si duæ res de quibus agitur connectuntur ; aliter, indicativum admittunt : ut,

*Tempestas minatur antequam surgat.* Sen.

*Antè omnia veneunt quam gleba una ematur.* Cic.

*Quàm benè vivebant Saturno rege, priusquam Tellus in longas est patefacta vias.* Tib.

132. *Quin* et *quominus* negationem, vel dubitationem, vel simile aliquid sequentia, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

*Non dubitat quin brevi Troja sit peritura.* Cic.

*Parmenio Philippum deterrere voluit quominus medicamentum biberet.* Curt.

*Tiberium non solitudines protegebant quin tormenta pectoris fateretur.* Tac.

133. Conjunctiones finales, *ut*, *quo*, *ne*, et aliæ ab his derivatæ, subjunctivum exigunt : ut,

*Pylades Oresten se esse dixit, ut pro illo necaretur.* Cic.

*Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur.* Sen.

*Vereor ne tuum laborem augeam.* Cic.

134. *Ut*, cùm tempus vel comparationem significat, indicativum post se habet : ut,

*Ut sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister.* Ovid.

*Ut fugiunt aquilam, timidissima turba, columbæ.* Ov.

(a.) *Ut pro ubi* (rarus est usus) indicativo jungitur: ut,  
*Littus ut longè resonante Eod tunditur undâ.* Cat.

135. *Ut pro quamvis* subjunctivo jungitur: ut,  
*Ut fueris dignior, non competitor in culpâ est.* Cic.

136. *Utinam* subjunctivum exigit: ut,  
*Tu quoque cum ventis utinam mutabilis esses.* Cic.  
*Illud utinam ne verè scriberem.* Cic.

137. *Licet* subjunctivo jungitur; *quamvis* subjunctivo sæpius quam indicativo, nisi apud poetas; *quanquam* indicativo sæpius quam subjunctivo; *etsi* vel indicativo vel subjunctivo: ut,

*Improbatus, licet adversario molesta sit, judici invisus est.* Quint.

*Quod turpe est, id, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest.* Cic.

*Romani, quanquam prælio fessi erant, tamen procedunt.* Sall.

*Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt quod decet, etsi nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident.*  
 Cic.

138. *Si* et *nisi*, cùm indicatur rem de quâ agitur vel existere, vel posse existere, indicativo modo, vel præsentis vel perfecti subjunctivi junguntur; cùm indicatur rem non existere, imperfectum vel plusquamperfectum subjunctivi exigunt: ut,

*Hunc patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas.* Cic.

*Si unquam visus tibi sum fortis, certè me in illâ causâ admiratus esses.* Cic.

*Tu, nisi ventis*

*Debes ludibrium, cave.* Hor.

*Multa me dehortantur à vobis, nî studium reipublicæ superet.* Sall.

139. *Quasi, tanquam, et similia, subjunctivum exigunt: ut,*

*Quid ego his testibus utor, quasi res incerta ac dubia esset.* Cic.

*Sic cogitandum est tanquam aliquis in intimum pectus inspicere possit.* Sen.

140. *Quòd, quia, quoniam*, indicativo junguntur, cùm opinionem loquentis indicant; cùm aliorum, subjunctivo: ut,

*Refugit te, quia rugæ*

*Turpant et capitis nives.* Hor.

*Laudat Panætius Africanum, quòd fuerit abstinens.*  
Cic.

141. *Utrum, ne, an, num*, cùm dubitationem vel obliquam interrogationem significant, subjunctivum postulant, etiamsi conjunctio ipsa subaudiatur: ut,

*Difficile est dictu utrum hostes magis Pompeii virtutem pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dilexerint.* Cic.

*Legati speculari jussi sunt num sollicitati animi sociorum a rege Perseo essent.* Liv.

*Doleam necne doleam nihil interest.* Cic.

142. *Ne*, cùm prohibet, imperativo vel subjunctivo jungitur: ut,

*Ne temne quòd ultrò*

*Præferimus manibus vittas.* Virg.

*Tu ne quæsieris quem mihi, quem tibi*

*Finem Dî dederint.* Hor.

143. Omnes voces quæ interrogationem meram exprimunt, indicativo junguntur: ut,

*Tune id veritus es?* Cic.

*Num eum facti piget?* Cic.

*Quis fuit horrendos qui primus protulit enses?* Tib.

## DE RELATIVO.

144. *Qui* causam significans subjunctivum exigit: ut,  
*Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium à Senatu peterent, misere.* Liv.

*Voluptas non est digna ad quam sapiens respiciat.*  
Sen.

145. Cùm vero relativa præpositio substantivi locum supplet, verbum in indicativo ponitur : ut,

*Num alii oratores probantur à multitudine, alii ab iis qui intelligunt ? (i. e. à sapientibus.) Cic.*

*Quoscunque de te queri audivi (i. e. omnes querentes) placavi. Cic.*

146. Omnes voces indefinitè positæ, vel in obliquâ oratione, vel in sententiâ ab aliâ pendente, subjunctivum postulant : ut,

*Innocentia est affectio talis animi quæ noceat nemini. Cic.*

*Cui scribam video. Cic.*

*Experto credite, quantus*

*In clypeum assurgat, quo turbine torqueat hastam. Virg.*

## PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

147. Præpositiones

*Adversum adversus, cis citra, apud, ante, penesque,*

*Intra, infra, contra, supra, post, circiter, inter,*

*Circa circum, ultra, juxta, erga, præter, et extra,*

*Ob, prope, per, propter, versus, trans, pone, secundum, ad,*  
accusativum regunt : ut,

*Quem penes arbitrium est. Hor.*

*Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros. Virg.*

*Propter aquas. Virg.*

*Amicitia propter se expetenda est. Cic.*

*Per mare pauperiem fugiens. Hor.*

*Ludi decem per dies facti sunt. Cic.*

*Per me unum effectum est ut libertas in civitate maneret. Cic.*

*Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragædias fecit. Cic.*

*Castra ad Cybistra locavi. Cic.*

*Aliquot post menses ad Cæsarem venit. Cic.*

*Post equitem sedet atra cura.* Hor.

*Præter castra Cæsar suas copias transduxit.* Cæs.

*Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est.* Cic.

148. *A* (ante vocalem *ab*,) *absque, sine, coram, cum, æ e* (ante vocalem *ex*,) *præ, pro,* ablativum regunt: ut,  
*A te principium, tibi desinet.* Virg.

*Tecum mihi discordia est.* Hor.

*Non sine Dîs animosus infans.* Hor.

*Non loqui præ mærore potuit.* Cic.

*Stabat pro templo et Capitolia celsa tenebat.* Virg.

*Cuncta pro hostibus erant.* Tac.

*E consulatu est profectus in Galliam.* Cic.

*Feliciter, et ex meâ sententiâ rempublicam gessit.* Cic.

149. *In, super, sub, et subter* (quod tamen rarò invenitur,) pro sensu accusativum vel ablativum regunt: ut,  
*Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis.* Hor.

*In Senatum venit.* Cic.

*Lucus in arce fuit summâ.* Ovid.

*Super et Garamantas et Indos*

*Proferet imperium.* Virg.

*Multa super Priamo rogitans, super Hectore multa.* Virg.

*Manet sub Jove frigido venator.* Hor.

*Sub eas literas statim recitatae sunt tuæ.* Cic.

*Multaque me fugiunt primis spectata sub annis.* Ovid.

*Exercitus ejus sub jugum missus est.* Cæs.

*Angusti subter fastigia tecti*

*Æneam duxit.* Virg.

*Subter densâ testudine tuti.* Virg.

150. *Tenus* ablativum singularem, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem regit; et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,

*Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem.* Virg.

*Et crurum tenus à mento palearia pendent.* Virg.

*Alterâ per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est.* Ovid.



151. Præpositio in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit quem extra compositionem regebat (*Vid. Reg. 75*): ut,

*Detrudunt naves scopulo.* Virg.

*Prætereunt scopulos Ithacæ.*

152. Verba composita cum *a, ab, ad, con, de,* et aliis præpositionibus, eandem præpositionem sæpe repetunt: ut,

*Abstinerunt à vino.*

### INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

153. Interjectiones non rarò sine casu ponuntur: ut,  
*Spem gregis, ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit.* Virg.

154. *O* vocantis vocativo, exclamantis vocativo vel accusativo, jungitur: ut,

*O fortunatos nimium, sua si bona nôrint,*

*Agrícolas!* Virg.

*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.* Virg.

155. *Heu* et *proh* accusativo vel vocativo junguntur: ut,

*Heu pietas, heu prisca fides.* Virg.

*Heu stirpem invisam.* Virg.

*Proh Deúm atque hominum fidem.* Ter.

*Proh sancte Jupiter.* Cic.

156. *Hei* et *væ* dativo junguntur: ut,

*Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis.*  
Ovid.

*Væ misero mihi, quantâ de spe decidi.* Ter.

157. *En* et *ecce* nominativo vel accusativo junguntur: ut,

*Ecce tibi Italiæ tellus.* Virg.

*En quatuor aras;*

*Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo.* Virg.

## PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum*, *Spiritum*, et *Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantùm tractare.

*TEMPUS* est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur<sup>v</sup>; ut, *Dõmĩnũs*. Longum autem sic<sup>̄</sup>; ut, *cõntrã*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Pes duarum longarum syllabarum est spondæus: ut, *vĩrtũs*.

Longa syllaba, duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus, dactylum efficit; ut, *scribẽrẽ*.

SCANSIO est legitima versũs in singulos pedes com mensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*, et *Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis: ut,

*Sẽrã nĩmĩs vĩt' ẽst crãstĩnã, vĩv' hõdĩe*. Mart.  
pro *vita*; *vive*.

At *heu* et *o* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est, quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ: ut,

*Mõnstr' hõrrẽnd', ĩnfõrm', ĩngẽns, cuĩ lũmẽn ãdẽmptũm*.  
Virg  
pro *monstrum, horrendum, informe*.

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,

*Seū lēntō fűērīnt ālveāriǎ vīmīnĕ tĕxta.* Virg.  
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissectâ fiunt duæ: ut,

*Dĕbűērānt fűsōs ĕvōlűssĕ sűōs.* Ov. Ep.  
*evoluisse* pro *evolvisse*.

V. *Cæsura* est, cūm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,

*Pĕctōribűs ĩnhűāns spīrāntűā cōnsűlīt ĕxta.* Virg.

## DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.

VERSUS heroicus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

*Tītűrĕ tű pătűlĕe rĕcűbāns sűb tĕgmīnĕ fĕgĭ.* Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

*Cűrĕ Dĕűm sōbōlĕs, mĕgnűm Jōvīs ĩncrĕmĕntűm.* Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versûs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri: quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ; altera etiam duos pedes, sed omninò dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,

*Rĕs ĕst sōllĭcĭtĭ plĕnĕ tĭmōrĭs ŕmōr.* Ovid. Epist.

## PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eâdem dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut, *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*.

II. Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

*Mājōr sūm quā́m cū́ pōssīt fōrtūnā nōcēre.*

Syllabæ *jor*, *sum*, *quam*, et *sit*, positione longæ sunt.

(a) At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

*Fērtē cītī fērrūm, dātē tēlā, scāndītē mūros.* Virg.

III. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur: ut, *pātris*, *volūcris*: quæ tamen regula in compositis non obtinet: ut, *ādmīror*, *ābrīpio*, *sūbruo*, *ōbruo*.

VOCALIS ante alteram in eâdem dictione ubique brevis est: ut, *Dēus*, *mēus*, *tūus*, *pīus*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*: ut, *unīus*, *illīus*, &c. ubi *i* communis reperitur; licèt in *alterīus* semper sit brevis, in *alīus* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit; ut, *faciēi*: alioqui non; ut, *rēi*, *spēi*, *fidēi*.

*Fī* etiam in *fīo* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut, *fīerem*, *fīeri*.

*Omniā jā́m fīunt, fīērī quæ pōssē nēgābam.*

*Dīus* primam syllabam habet longam, *Dīana* communem.

*Ohe*, interjectio, priorem syllabam communem habet; *Eheu* penultimam semper producit.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite, Pīērides. Respice Laërten.*

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Ænēia nutrix. Rhodopēius Orpheus.*

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut *āurum, neuter, musae*: nisi sequente vocali, cū interdum corripitur: ut, *præire, præustus.*

DERIVATIVA eandem ferè cum primitivis quantitate sortiuntur: ut, *āmator, āmicus, āmabilis*, primā brevi ab *āmo*.

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta, primam syllabam producant: ut,

*cōmo, à cōma,*  
*fōmes,*  
*fōmentum,* } à *fōveo,*  
*hūmanus, ab hōmo,*  
*jūcundus,* } à *jūvo,*  
*jūmentum,*  
*lex lēgis, à lēgo,*  
*mācerō, à mācer,*  
*mōbilis, à mōveo,*  
*persōna, à persōno,*

*rex rēgis,* }  
*rēgina,* } à *rēgo,*  
*rēgula,* }  
*sēcūs, à sēcus,*  
*sēdes, à sēdeo,*  
*stīpendium, à stīps stīpis,*  
*tēgula, à tēgo,*  
*trāgula, à trāho,*  
*vox vōcis, à vōco.*

Et contrā sunt, quæ, à longis deducta, primam corripunt: ut,

*ārena,* }  
*ārista,* } ab *āreo,*  
*ārundo,*  
*āruspex, ab āra,*  
*dīcax,* } à *dīco,*  
*mālēdicus,*  
*dītio, à dītis,*  
*dux dūcis, à dūco,*  
*fīdes,* } à *fīdo,*  
*perfidus,*

*frāgor,* } à *frāngo,*  
*frāgilis,* }  
*lābo, à lābor,*  
*lūcerna, à lūceo,*  
*mōlestus, à mōles,*  
*ōdium, ab ōdi,*  
*pāciscor, à pax pācis,*  
*quandōquidem, à quandō,*  
*sīquidem, à sī,*  
*sōpor, à sōpio.*

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur: ut, à *lĕgo lĕgis, parlĕgo*; à *lĕgo lĕgas, allĕgo*; à *pōtens, impōtens*; à *sōlor, consōlor*.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevia à longis enata: ut, *dejĕro, pejĕro*; à *jūro*; *innūba, pronūba, nūbo*.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *lĕgi, ĕmi, mōvi*.

1. Excipias tamen, *bĭbi, dĕdi, scĭdi, stĕti, sĭti, tŭli, et fĭdi* à *findo*.

2. Primam præteriti geminancia primam brevem habent: ut, *cĕcĭdi, à cado*; *cĕcĭdi, à cædo*; *dĭdici, fĕfelli, mōmordi, pĕpendi, pŭpugi, tĕtendi, tĕtigi, tōtondi, tŭtudi*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *vĭsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum*.

Excipe *dātum, ĭtum, lĭtum, rātum, rŭtum, sātum, sĭtum, stātum*, et *cĭtum* à *cĭo cĭes*; nam *cĭtum* à *cĭo cĭs*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

Penultima tertiæ personæ pluralis perfecti activi in *-erunt* desinens, si antepenultima brevis sit, communis habenda est.

## ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. *A* Finita producuntur : ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

Excipias, *itā, quiā, eiā.* Item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis ; præter vocativos à Græcis in *as* ; ut, *ô Æneā* : et ablativum primæ declinationis : ut, *musā.*

II. In *b, d, t*, puris desinentia, brevia sunt : ut, *āb, ād, capūt.*

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur : ut, *āc, sīc, et hīc*, adverbium.

Sed *fāc, nēc, donēc*, corripiuntur.

Prohomen *hīc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modò non sit ablativi casūs, communia sunt.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut, *marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflectionis in *e* ; ut, *fidē, diē, unā* cum particulis indè enatis ; ut, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridiē, postridiē* : item *quarē*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis ; ut, *docē, movē* : præter *cavē*, quod ultimam plerumque corripit.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e* ; ut, *mē, tē, sē* : præter *quē, nē, vē*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent: ut, *pulchrē*, *doctē*, *valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē*, *ferē*: *benē* tamen et *malē* corripuntur omninò.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per  $\eta$  scribuntur, naturâ producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casûs, generis, aut numeri: ut, *Lethē*, *Anchisē*, *cetē*, *Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt: ut, *dominī*, *magistrī*, *amarī*.

Præter *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, quæ sunt communia.

*Nisī* et *quasī* corripuntur.

Corripuntur quoque dativi et vocativi singulares nominum priorum in *is*, à Græcis derivatorum, quorum genitivus penultimâ brevi crescit: ut, dativi *Minoidī*, *Palladī*, *Phyllidī*; vocativi *Alexī*, *Amaryllī*, *Daphnī*.

VI. *L* finita corripuntur: ut, *animāl*, *Hannibāl*, *mēl*, *pugīl*, *consūl*.

Præter *nīl* (contractum à *nihil*), *sāl*, et *sōl*.

VII. *N* finita corripuntur: ut, *ăn*, *carměn*, *īn*, *Iliōn*, *Itīyn*.

Excipiuntur *quīn*, *nōn*; et nomina pauca à Græcis derivata, quæ penultimam genitivi producunt: ut, *delphīn*, *delphīnis*; *Xenophōn*, *Xenophōntis*.

Producuntur quoque accusativi masculini primæ declinationis in *ān* et *ēn*: ut, *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*; et accusativi fœminini in *ēn* et *rān*: ut, *Pēnēlōpēn*, *Electrān*: cæteri fœminini in *ăn* corripuntur: ut, *Maiăn*, *Iphigeniăn*.



VIII. *O* finita longa sunt: ut, *dicō, virgō, porrō, legendō.*

Excipiuntur *modō, et composita ejus; et sciō, nesciō, putō, citō, egō, homō, cedō, quæ corripuntur.*

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba in *o* desinentia, quæ ultimam interdum corripunt: ut,

*Te petō quem merui.* Ov.

*Non erō, terra, tuus.* Ov.

*Fortunam vultus fassa tēgendō suos.* Ov.

Sed hæc exempla non sunt à tironibus imitanda.

Propria nomina virorum in *o* desinentia communia sunt: ut, *Polliō, Nasō.*

*Duō* quoque et *nemō* ultimam communem habent.

IX. *R* finita corripuntur: ut, *Cæsār, pēr, vīr, uxōr, turtūr.*

Producuntur autem, *fār, Lār, Nār, vēr, fūr, cūr; pār* quoque, cum compositis: ut, *compār, impār, dispār.*

Græca etiam in *ēr*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt: ut, *aēr, craīēr, charactēr, æthēr; præter patēi et matēr, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.*

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminationes: nempè, *as, es, is, os, us, ys.*

I. *As* finita producuntur: ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās.*

Præter nomina propria Græca, quorum genitivus singularis penultimam brevem habet: ut, *Arcās, Pallās; genitivo, Arcādōs, Pallūdōs.*

Et præter accusativos plurales Græco more formatos: ut, *herōs, heroās; gigās, gigantās.*

II. *Es* finita longa sunt: ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs.*

1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt: ut, *mīlēs*, *segēs*, *divēs*. Sed *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, et *pēs*, unà cum compositis, ut *bipēs*, *tripēs*, longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque, à *sum*, unà cum compositis, corripitur; ut, *potēs*, *adēs*, *prodēs*, *obēs*: quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum: ut, *hippomanēs*, *cacoëthēs*. *Cyclopēs*, *Naiadēs*.

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt: ut, *Parīs*, *panīs*, *tristīs*, *hilarīs*.

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur: ut, *musīs*, *mensīs* à *mensa*, *dominīs*, *templīs*; et *quīs* pro *quibus*.

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*; genitivo, *Samnītis*, *Salamīnis*.

3. Et monosyllaba item omnia; ut, *vīs*, *līs*: præter *īs* et *quīs* nominativos, et *bīs* apud Ovidium.

Secunda persona singularis præsentis activi quartæ conjugationis producit *īs*; ut, *audīs*: sic *possīs*, *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*.

Secundæ personæ singulares futuri secundi activi indicativi, et perfecti subjunctivi, *īs* commune faciunt: ut, *fecerīs*, *dederīs*.

(a.) Porrò in his temporibus secunda persona pluralis penultimam communem habet: ut, *dixerītis*, *transierītis*.

*Gratīs* et *forīs* ultimam producunt.

IV. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs*, *nepōs*, *dominōs*, *servōs*.

Præter *compōs*, *impōs*, *ōs ossis*, et *exōs*.

Et nomina propria derivata à Græcis in *os* : ut, *Delōs*, *Chaōs*, *Palladōs*, *Phyllidōs*.

v. *Us* finita corripuntur : ut, *famulŭs*, *regiŭs*, *tempŭs*, *amamŭs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *salŭs*, *tellŭs* ; genitivo, *salŭtis*, *tellŭris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflectionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares : ut, gen. sing. *manŭs* ; nom. accus. voc. plur. *manŭs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba : ut, *crŭs*, *thŭs*, *mŭs*, *sŭs*.

Et Græca item per *ovç* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casûs : ut, nom. *Panthŭs*, *Melampŭs* ; gen. *Sap-phŭs*, *Clŭs*.

vi. *Ys* finita corripuntur : ut, *Itŷs*.

XI. *U* finita producuntur omnia : ut, *manŭ*, *genŭ*, *amatŭ*, *diŭ*.

XII. *Y* finita corripuntur : ut, *Tiphŷ*.

# PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ;

OR,

## THE GENDERS OF NOUNS,

CONSTRUED.

I. PROPRIA *proper names quæ which* tribuuntur *are assigned* maribus *to the male kind* dicas *you may call* mascula *masculines* ; ut *as*, sunt *are* Divorum *the names of the heathen Gods*, Mars *the God of war*, Bacchus *the God of wine*, Apollo *the God of wisdom* ; Virorum *the names of men* ; ut *as* Cato, *a noble Roman*, Virgilius *the Poet Virgil* ; Fluviorum *the names of Rivers* ; ut *as*, Tiberis *the Tiber*, Orontes, *a river by Antioch* ; Mensium *the names of months*, ut *as* October *the month October* ; Ventorum *the names of winds*, ut *as* Libis *the south-west wind*, Notus *the south wind*, Auster *the south wind* ; Montium *the names of mountains*, ut *as* Ossa *mount Ossa* ; Alp̄is tamen *but the Alps* est *is* muliebris *feminine*, et *and* C̄eta *mount C̄eta*, Cyllene *mount Cyllene*, Rhodope *mount Rhodope*, et *and* Ætna *mount Ætna* gravis *terrible* c̄æcis ignibus *with hidden fires* ; Pelion *mount Pelion* est neutrum *is neuter* ; Soracte *mount Soracte*, Ceraunia *the Ceraunian mountains* neutra *are neuter*. (v. 1—7.)

II. PROPRIA nomina *proper names* referentia *denoting* fœmineum *the female sex* tribuuntur *are given* fœmineo *generi to the feminine gender* ; sive *whether* sunt *they are* Dearum *the names of Goddesses*, ut *as* Juno *Jupiter's wife*, Venus *the Goddess of beauty* ; Muliebria *the names of women*, ut *as* Anna *Anne*, Philotis *Philote* ; Urbium *the names of cities*, ut *as* Elis *a city of Peloponnesus*, Opus *a city of Locris* : Regionum *the names of countries*, ut *as* Græcia

*Greece, Persis Persia* : Item also nomen the name insu'æ of an island; ceu *as, Creta Crete, Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.* (v. 8—12.)

*Dulichium the island Dulichium* neutrum is neuter, ut *ventura regula a coming rule* monstrat *shews.* Excipias etiam *ou may except also* quasdam *urbes some cities*; nam *for* Imo *Sulmo et and Delphi the town Delphi* mascula *are masculine*, et *similes and similar words.* *Selinus the town Selinus* enus est *utrumque is of both genders*, *Pharsalus so is Pharsalus*, et *Marathon and Marathon.* Quædam *some are neutralia neuter*; ut *as, Argos Argos, Tusculum Tusculum*, item *also Tibur Tivoli, Tarentumque and Taranto* imbelles *luxu effeminate from luxury*; *Pergamaque and Troy*, et *and quot pluralia as many plural nouns as præstant finem in a have their termination in a.* *Præneste Præneste* dat *gives* fœmineum *et neutrum the feminine and neuter gender*, *Ilion so does Troy, Anxur and Terracina.* *Latium Latium* est neutrum *is neuter*, *Bosphorus the Bosphorus* mas *is masculine*; adjice *add* *Pontus Pontus.* (v. 13—20.)

III. DISCES *you will learn that* nomina *gemmarum the names of precious stones* are fœminei generis *of the feminine gender*, veluti *as sapphirus a sapphire*; ast *but opalus an opal* mas *is masculine* atque *and smaragdus an emerald.* Cernes *item you will see also* nomina *the names arborum of trees* muliebria *feminine*; ut *as, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree.* *Spinus a sloe-tree* mas *is masculine*, *oleaster a wild olive-tree* mas *is masculine.* Plerumque *videbis you will for the most part see cætera the rest in er ending in er* neutrale *genus of the neuter gender*; quale *as, papaver a poppy, acer a maple-tree*; quæis *adjice to which add* thus *frankincense* atque *and robur an oak.* *Cytisusque and hadder rubusque and a bramble* adjungunt *add muliebri the feminine gender mari to the masculine*: *intubus endive in numero plurali in the plural number* habet *has* *intuba, neutrum of the neuter gender.* (v. 21—28.)

Nomina *the names volucrum of birds*; ceu *as, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow*: *ferarum of wild beasts*; ut *as, felis a cat, vulpes a fox*: et *and piscium the names of fishes*; ut *as, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called*

*epicœna nouns of the epicene gender; quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.* (v. 29—31.)

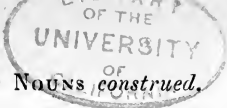
*Multa etiam many also dabunt will give commune genus the common gender; ut as, lepus a hare, anser a goose, vespertilio a bat, mus a mouse, grus a crane, bos an ox or cow, canis a dog, atque and elephantus an elephant. Sus a pig, tigris a tiger, et and anguis a snake jungunt join fœmineum the feminine gender mari to the masculine; et and serpens a serpent, damæque and deer, et and talpæ moles egentes lumine deprived of sight.* (v. 32—35.)

#### IV. DECLENSION I.

*As, es, words ending in as and es erunt will be mascula masculines: inflexio prima the first declension habebit will have a, e, words ending in a or e fœminei generis of the feminine gender, nisi unless sensus the sense prohibet forbids. Boreas the north wind, satrapes a satrap, mas are masculine; litera a letter muliebris is feminine, Circe and Circe. Sed but scriba a scribe mas genus is the masculine gender, sic so scurra a buffoon, athleta an athlete, lanista a fencing master.* (v. 36—39.)

#### V. DECLENSION II.

*Secunda the second declension dat gives um nouns ending in um neutrale neuter, us et er nouns ending in us and er plurimumque generally mas masculine. Sic so regnum a kingdom neutrum is neuter, dominus a master mas is masculine, atque and magister a teacher. Sed but quæ dicta supra sunt what has been said before dabunt will give legenti the reader pauca a few words excipienda to be excepted; nam for malus an apple arbor being a tree muliebris erit will be feminine, et Abydus and Abydos nomen the name urbis of a city: sic so alvus a belly, humus the ground, colus a distaff, atque and carbasus linen, et and vannus a winnowing machine; sic so phaselus a boat nota known Nilo to the Nile.—Pauca etiam a few also deducta derived Græcis from the Greeks occurrent will occur, papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus a diphthong, byssus fine flax, et*



*and illa those words quot as many as os breve os short claudit ends; ceu as, Delos Delos, Sestos Sestos, et and Isthmos an isthmus; sed but virus poison, pelagus the sea neutralia are neuter, et and adjice add vulgus the common people, quamvis although interdum sometimes ponas you may class hoc this inter mascula among masculines: non genus est ullum there is not any gender quo in which penus provisions non inveniatur will not be found.* (v. 40—51.)

## VI. DECLENSION III.—MASCULINES.

Crede consider voces the words quas which tertia inflexio the third declension reddit affords mares masculine lectori to the reader, si if or, os, er, o quoque and o claudit terminate rectum the nominative case; vel or quas those which es finit ends, quibusque and in which genitivus the genitive case crescit increases: sic so, honor honour, atque and heros a hero, crater a cup, sermoque and a discourse, tapesque and a carpet: at but soror a sister atque and uxor a wife muliebria semper are always feminine, et and arbor a tree; sed but cor a heart, marmor marble, ador corn, et and æquor the sea neutralia semper are always neuter. Sic so cos a whetstone est is fœminei generis of the feminine gender, dosque and a dowry, sed but os, seu whether oris habet it makes oris (meaning a face), sive ossis or ossis (meaning a bone,) erit will be neutrale neuter, chaosque and chaos, et and melos melody; atque alia and other words deducta derived a linguâ Pelasgâ from the Greek language. Tuber, fructus when meaning the fruit, mas est is masculine, sed but erit it will be muliebris feminine ut as arbor the tree: linter a boat communis is common; ver spring neutrum is neuter, so are verber a stripe, et and uber a teat, atque and cadaver a carcass, iter a journey, spinther a buckle, quibus adjice to which add tuber a mushroom, atque and quot nomina as many nouns as finita per er ending in er notant denote plantas plants. Ex-cipias quoque you may except also, lector o reader, hyperdis-syllabon a word of more than two syllables in do ending in do, et quot and as many words as io claudit ends, deducta being derived verbis from verbs; velut as libido lust, formidoque and fear; sic so dictio speaking, lectio reading; porro more-over caro flesh est is muliebris feminine, atque and echo echo,

atque *and* Argo *the Argo* et *and* imago *an image*; cupido *love* est *is* ritè *properly* muliebris *feminine*, cùm *when* notat *it* speaks of affectum *the passion*, et tamen *and* yet vates *poets* interdum *sometimes* cogunt hoc *press this* in mascula *into the list of masculines*. Disces *you will learn* pauca *that a few* finita per es *ending in es* fœminei generis *are of the feminine gender*, licet *increasing* crescentia *although increasing in the genitive case*; merges *a fork-ful*, mercesque *and a reward*, quiesque *and rest*, et *and* teges *a mat*, atque *and* seges *a cornfield*; quadrupes *a quadruped* communis *is common*, et *and* ales *a bird*, atque *and* obses *a hostage*, comes *a companion*, atque *and* hospes *a host, or hostess*, quibus *to which* adice *add* princeps *a prince, or princess*. (v. 52—74.)

### VII. DECLENSION III.—FEMININES.

Omne quod *every word which* exit in ends in as, is, ys, aus, x, es quoque *and es*, quando *when* non *does not* crescit *it does not increase* genitivo *in the genitive case*, erit *will be* muliebre *feminine*; superque *and moreover* s liquidâ præeunte s *when preceded by a liquid præbet idem genus gives the same gender*, memento *remember*; sic so pietas *piety*, fraus *fraud*, atque *and* chlamys *a cloak*, navisque *and a ship*, ratisque *and a ship*, pax *peace*, radix *a root*, nubes *a cloud*, et *and* hyems *winter*, mors *death*; excipe *except* pauca *a few*; as assis *a pound weight* mas erit *will be masculine*, compôstaque *and its compounds*; elephasque *and an elephant* mas *is masculine*, et *and* quicquid Græcum *whatever word originally Greek*, habet -antis *makes -ontis in the genitive*, ut as Atlas *Atlas*, atque *and* gigas *a giant*, adamas *adamant*, vas vadis *a surety*, e sensu *because of the sense*, est *is* mas *is masculine*, vas vasis *a vessel*, neutrum *is neuter*; sic so fas *right* neutrale *is neuter*, nefasque *and wrong*. Videbis quoque *you will see also* multa *many nouns* is finita *ending in is* mascula *masculine*, pulvis *dust*, et *and* pollis *bran*, cucumis *a cucumber*, sanguis *blood*, lapis *a stone*, amnis *a river*, et *and* axis *an axletree*, glis *a dormouse*, caulis *a stalk*, cassis, cùm non *does not* crescit *in the genitive*, when, meaning *a net*, it does not increase in the genitive, (cassis enim *for a helmet*, à quo *from which* cassidis venit *comes* est *is* muliebre *feminine*) collis *a hill*, fascis *a faggot*, follis *a bellows*, funis *a rope*, pestis *a plague*, et *and* ensis *a*



*sword, ignis fire, panis bread, piscis a fish, postis a door-post, et and adjice add mensis a month, orbis a world, sentis a thorn, torris a brand, vectis a lever, vermis a worm, et and unguis a talon, natalis a birth-day; et and quæ words which rarius extant are seldom found numero primo in the singular number, annales annals, addeque and add molares eye-teeth rapidis jugalibus to fleet carriage-horses. Quinetiam moreover cernes you will see pauca a few communia common; canali a channel, et and scrobis a ditch, et and torquis a chain, callis a path, finis an end, cinis ashes, etsi although hæc duo these two last plurali in the plural number apparent tibi are seen by you tantum mascula as masculine only. Et quoniam and since nunc vir sometimes a man, nunc scæmina sometimes a woman dicitur is spoken of, hostis an enemy est is commune genus of the common gender, civis so is a citizen, testis a witness, patruelis a cousin. Lex potior a law of superior weight est data has been assigned cur why Halys the river Halys exstet mas is masculine, et and Othrys mount Othrys. Es non crescens es not increasing in the genitive dat gives mascula nulla no masculine nouns, acinace dempto except a scimitar. At but vates a poet commune is common, vepres etiam also a bramble, atque and palumbes a dove.—Græca the words derived from Greek quæ which ax finit end in ax sunt are plurima mascula mostly masculines, thorax a breast-plate, et and cordax a kind of dance, anthrax a coal; sic so plurima many words quæ which ex claudit ex ends, qualis such as apex a top, codex a book, cimex a bug, cortexque and bark, culexque and a gnat, grex a flock, vertex a top, murex a shell-fish, pulex a flea, caudexque and a stool, silexque and flint.—Pauca a few per ix finita ending in ix, calix a cup, fornix a vault, ita so phœnix a phœnix, Græcaque and words derived from Greek in yx ending in yx, ut as onyx an onyx, et and oryx an antelope, bombyxque and a silkworm, calyxque and the cup of a flower; sic so quincunx five ounces, septunx seven ounces, et cætera and the rest of such words mascula are masculine; porrò moreover adeps fat, dens a tooth, fons a fountain, mons a mountain, pons a bridge, mascula are masculine; hydropsque and the dropsy, chalybsque and steel, gryps a griffin, torrens a torrent, oriensque and the east, rudensque and a cable, bidensque and a sheep, tridensque and a trident; epopsque both a hoopoe meropsque and a woodpecker mascula are*

*masculine, et and stirps a stock habetur is accounted communis common.* (v. 75—110.)

### VIII. DECLENSION III.—NEUTERS.

Quæ the nouns which a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us, claudunt end, leguntur are found in reading neutra to be neuter; vides you may see exempla examples; poema a poem, et and mare the sea, misy vitriol, sinapi mustard, alec pickle, lac milk, mel honey, animalque and an animal; carmen a verse et and adde add caput a head, laquear a ceiling, jecur the liver, adjice add tempus time. Sol the sun, mugil a mullet, mascula are masculine; sic so sal salt plerumque generally, pluralique and in the plural number sales wit semper always. Præsul a president et and exul an exile et and vigil a sentinel communia are common; fidicen a harpist, ren a kidney, pecten a comb, mascula are masculines; et and addas you may add paucissima a very few deducta derived a Græcâ linguâ from the Greek language, delphin a dolphin, lichen ringworm, et and pæan a song in honour of Apollo; primâque e lege and according to the first rule in the book, Cithæron mount Cithæron, sindon muslin, atque and icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon, muliebria sunt are feminine; et and aleyones king-fishers, quæ which word rarius exstant is seldom found numero primo in the singular number. Par, significans meaning socium a mate, mas is masculine; turtur a turtle-dove mas is masculine, et and augur a soothsayer, fur a thief, vultur a vulture, sic so furfur bran: pauca a few in us ending in us muliebria are feminine, ut as virtus virtue, incus an anvil, tellus the earth, palus a marsh, atque and juvenus youth, atque and pecus a flock, making pecudis in the genitive case; dans when it makes pecoris meaning a herd accipe take it neutrum as neuter. (v. 111—125.)

### IX. DECLENSION IV.

U neutrum a noun ending in u is neuter, ut as cornu a horn; us a noun ending in us mas is masculine, ceu as cursus a course, et and actus an act of a play; porticus a portico, atque and tribus a tribe, muliebria are feminine, acusque and a needle, domusque and a house, et and manus a hand, et and

quercus *an oak*, sic so idus *the ides of the month* cum quinquatribus *and a feast in honour of Minerva called Quinquatrus*; sensus *the sense* monstrat *shows* anus *an old woman*, nurus *a daughter-in-law*, et *and* socrus *a mother-in-law* muliebria *to be feminine.* (v. 126—129.)

## X. DECLENSION V.

Quinta *the fifth declension* dat *gives* muliebre *genus the feminine gender*, ut *as* spes *hope*; at *but* dies *a day* est *is* numero plurali *in the plural number* mas tantum *masculine only*; primo *in the singular number* commune *it is common.* (v. 130, 131.)

## XI. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* habentia *having* duntaxat *only* unam vocem *one termination*, ut *as*, felix *happy*, audax *bold*, retinent *keep* genus omne *every gender* sub unâ *under that one ending*. Si *if* cadunt *they fall* sub *under* geminâ *voce a double termination*, velut *as*, omnis, et *and* omne *all*, vox prior *the former word* est *is* commune duûm *the common of two genders*, vox altera *the second word* neutrum *is neuter*: at *but* si *if* variant *they vary* tres voces *the three endings*, ut *as*, sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred*; vox prima *the first word* est *is* mas *masculine*, altera *the second* fœmina *feminine*, tertia *the third* neutrum *is neuter.* (v. 132—137.)

Sunt queis *there are some in which* plurales casus *the plural cases* in a ending in a non adhibentur *are not used*, pauper *poor*, inops *poor*, puber *of ripe age*, sospes *safe*, cum *with* degener *degenerate*, uber *fruitful*, et *and* dives *rich*, locuples *rich*, memor *mindful*, immemor *unmindful*, atque *and* superstes *surviving.* (v. 138—140.)

# NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR,

## IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficiunt fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called Heteroclita Heteroclites, or nouns irregular.* (v. 1, 2.)

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying genus the gender in variis numeris in the different numbers.* (v. 3.)

Nam *for hæc these words maria masculine primo numero in the singular number sunt neutra are neuter secundo in the plural: tartarus horribilis horrid hell; sic so sibilus a hiss, intubus endive, exstant are seen. At but jocus a jest addit utrumque genus adds both genders plurali numero to the plural number, et and locus a place:—hæc these words primo muliebria are feminine in the singular, neutra neuter secundo in the plural; Pergamos Troy, et and ostrea the oyster exquirenda to be sought lautis cœnis for rich suppers, carbasus and linen:—hæc these words habebunt will have neutrum the neuter gender primo in the singular number, mas the masculine altero in the other; et both siser a parsnip, et and cœlum heaven, Argosque and Argos amatum loved Junoni by Juno. Rastrum a rake exstat exists genere utroque in each gender plurali in the plural, et and frenum a bridle, quin moreover epulum a feast primo in the singular, ast but epulæ, leguntur is read plurale in the plural.* (v. 4—12.)

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is a nca defective casu in case, numerove or in number.* (v. 13.)

HIS neutris *in these neuters* poteris tu *you will be able* cernere *to see* nullos casus *no cases*, nī *except* qui *those which* sunt tibi *are*, ut scis *as you know*, semper *always* îdem *the same* in hoc genere *in this gender*. Hippomanes *a humour in mares*, cacoethes *a bad habit*, epos *an epic poem*, melos *melody*, adjice *add* gummi *gum*, et *and* fas *right*, mane *the morning*, nihil *nothing*, pondo *weight*, instar *likeness*; plurali *in the plural*, Tempe *the vale of Tempe*, grata *pleasant* perenni sub zephyro *with perpetual zephyrs*, tot *so many*, quot *how many*, et *and* omnes numeri *all nouns of number* à tribus *from three* ad centum *to a hundred*, quæ *which* vocantur *ore* called aptota *aptotes*. (v. 14—19.)

SUNT quoque *there are also* nomina multa *many nouns* quæis *to which* rectus casus *the nominative case* abest *is wanting*, aut alii *or other cases*, deficientes *deficient* nullo certo ordine *in no certain order*, ut *as* fors *chance*, frugis *corn*, opis *help*, dapis *a feast*, et *and* vicis *a turn*, impetis *violence*, et *and* vis *force*, verberis *a strike*, et *and* fidis *a lyre*, atque *and* lues *a plague*, sordemque *and dirt*, vepremque *and a bramble*; quin *moreover* pauca *a few* videnda sunt *are to be seen* ablativo solo *in the ablative case alone*, ut sunt *as are* compede *a fetter*, fauce *a jaw*, prece *prayer*, atque *and* ambage *a circuit*; sed *but* omnia *all these* plerumque leguntur *are generally found* integra *entire* plurali numero *in the plural number*. Sic *so* jussu *by order*, natu *by birth*, permissu *by leave*, sponte *of one's own accord*, rogatu *by asking*, mandatu *by command*; sed *his but* to these et pluralis *the plural also* deficit *is wanting*, atque *and* plura quoque *more also* occurrent *will occur* tibi *to you* suo tempore *quæque each in its good time*.

(v. 20—29.)

Hæc *these words* nunquam habebunt *will never have* pluralem numerum *a plural number*, nam *for* sensus *the sense* prohibet *prevents it*; cœnum *mud*, limus *clay*, sic *so* triticum *wheat*, et *and* aurum *gold*, argentum *silver*, et *and* paria *similar words*; his *to these* pietas *piety* addenda *is to be added*, pudorque *and shame*, et *and* sitis *thirst*, atque *and* fames *hunger*, infantia *infancy*, firma *juventus* *vigorous youth*, atque *and* senecta *gravis* *sad old age*, vel *or* senectus, vox *magis* *apta a better word*; ver *spring*, vesper *evening*, letum *death*, specimen *a specimen*, victusque *and food*, supellexque *and furni-*

*ture, et an* *I* *virus* *poison*, *sanguis* *blood*, *plebs* *the people*, *atque* *and* *ignobile vulgus* *the mean common people*, *cum paucis aliis* *with a few others*; *sic* *so* *nomina propria cuncta* *all proper names*.  
(v. 30—37.)

MASCULA *these masculines sunt* *are* *contenta* *confined* *numero secundo* *to the plural number tantum only*, *manes* *ghosts*, *majores* *ancestors*, *cancelli* *lattices*, *liberi* *children*, *et* *and* *antes* *the fore-ranks of vines*, *primores* *chiefs*, *proceres* *nobles*, *fasti* *simul* *also* *annals*, *atque* *and* *minores* *posterity*, *inferi* *the gods below*, *item* *also* *superi* *the gods above*, *lemures* *spectres*, *quibus* *to which* *adde* *add* *penates* *household gods*, *et* *and* *loca* *names of places plurali of the plural number*, *quales* *as* *que* *both* *Gabii* *a city in Italy* *que* *and* *Locri* *the inhabitants of Locris*, *et* *and* *quæcunque* *whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature* *legas* *you may read* *passim* *in authors*.  
(v. 38—43.)

Hæc *these nouns sunt* *are* *fœminei generis of the feminine gender*, *que* *and* *numeri secundi of the plural number*; *exuviæ* *anything stript off from the body*, *phaleræ* *horse-trappings*, *grates* *thanks*, *et* *and* *ineptiæ* *follies*, *et* *and* *idus* *the ides of a month*, *blanditiæ* *caresses*, *induciæ* *a truce*, *simul* *also* *que* *both* *insidiæ* *an ambush*, *que* *and* *minæ* *threats*, *excubiæ* *watch by day and night*, *nonæ* *the nones of a month*, *nugæ* *trifles*, *tricæ* *que* *and* *toys*, *calendæ* *the calends of a month*, *quisquilæ* *the sweepings or refuse of any thing*, *thermæ* *a hot bath*, *cunæ* *a cradle*, *diræ* *curses*, *que* *and* *exequiæ* *funeral rites*, *feriæ* *holidays*, *et* *and* *inferiæ* *sacrifices performed to the dead*, *sic* *so* *primitiæ* *que* *both* *the first fruits of the year*, *plagæ* *que* *and* *nets*. *Deliciæ* *delight*, *tenebræ* *que* *and* *darkness*, *et* *and* *valvæ* *fold-ing-doors*, *divitiæ* *que* *and* *riches*, *item* *also* *nuptiæ* *a marriage*, *et* *and* *lactes* *the small guts*: *Thebæ* *Thebes* *et* *and* *Athenæ* *Athens* *addantur* *may be added*, *quod* *genus of which sort* *invenias* *you may find* *et* *also* *nomina plura* *more names* *locorum of places*.  
(v. 44—52.)

Hæc *neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur* *are read rariùs* *seldom* *primo* *in the singular*; *mœnia* *the walls of a city*, *cum* *with* *tesquis* *rough and desert places*, *præcordia* *the midriff of the body*, *lustra* *the dens* *ferarum of wild beasts*, *arma* *arms*, *mapalia* *Numidian cottages*, *sic* *so* *bellaria* *junkets*, *munia* *an office or charge*, *castra* *a camp*;

*funus a funeral* petit requires *justa solemnities*, et *and virgo a virgin* petit requires *sponsalia espousals*; *disertus an eloquent man* amat loves *rostra the pulpit*, *puerique and children* gestant carry *crepundia rattles*, *infantesque and infants* colunt *cunabula lie in cradles*; *angur a soothsayer* consulit consults *exta the entrails*, *piæ puellæ pious maidens* connectunt weave *sacra sarta sacred garlands*. *Festa the feasts deûm of the gods*, ceu as *Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus*, poterunt will be able *jungi to be joined*. Quòd si *and if leges you shall read plura more*, licet reponas *you may place them* quoque also *hâc classe in this rank*. (v. 53—61.)

Porro moreover invenies tu *you will find*, lector o reader, *nomina pauca a few nouns secundæ of the second declension sumentia taking etiam also quosdam casus some cases quartæ of the fourth*, atque and *præcipue particularly dedignantia disdaining fines is atque e the terminations is and e*; ut as, *laurus a bay tree*, *necnon and ficus a fig*, *domus a house*, *altaque pinus and lofty pine*, et *and colus a distaff*, et *and cornus a cornel tree*, *cupressusque and the cypress* *invisa hated vivis by the living*. (v. 62—66.)

## AS IN PRÆSENTI, &amp;c.

OR,

## THE RULES FOR VERBS,

CONSTRUED.

I. AS in præsentī a verb making as in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense in avi: ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme except lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, quin moreover cubo to lie semper dat always makes cubui, seco to cut dat makes secui, mico to shine reddit gives micui, sic so frico to rub dat makes fricui, domo to tame dat makes domui, a from sono to sound sonui formatur is formed, tonoque and to thunder generabit will make tonui. Adde tibi add crepo to crack, quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid, quod which dat makes vetui. Interdum sometimes neco to kill dat makes necui, plerumque usually necavi, applico to apply sæpius dabit will oftener give applicui, rariùs more seldom -avi; at but supplico to supplicate multiplico to multiply semper formantur are always formed in -avi. Do das to give vult vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti. (v. 1—11.)

II. ES in præsentī a verb making es in the present tense format forms perfectum the perfect tense dans ui by ui; ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: moneo to advise dat makes monui, et and languo to languish fugiens avoiding geminum u the double u habebit will have langui. Sed but ingenuus puer the well-bred boy videbit will see multa many words excipienda to be excepted. Veo, fit becomes vi, ut as moveo to move movi, caveo quoque also to beware of cavi, ferveo item also to be hot habebit will have fervi, sed but sæpe often et also fervui. Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, neo to spin nevi, deleo to efface format forms delevi, exleo to fade, et verbum simile omne and every similar word dat makes -evi. Compleo to fill format forms complevi, repleoque and to fill replevi;



cio *to summon* dat *makes* civi, sed *but* præteritum *the perfect* raro exstat *is seldom seen.* Plurima sunt *there are many verbs* quorum perfectum *whose perfect* desinit in si *ends in si*, ut as jubeo *to order* jussi, maneo *to remain* mansi, et *and* ardeo *to burn* arsi, mulceo *to soothe* mulsi, suadeo *to advise* suasi, rideo *to smile* risi, sic so hæreo *to stick* formabit *will form* hæsi, torqueo *to twist* torsi. (v. 12—25.;

Si *if* l vel r l or r stet *stands ante before* geo, geo vertitur *is changed* in si *into si*: ut as urgeo *to urge* ursi, mulgeo *to milk* mulsi, fulgeo *to shine* fulsi. Sunt etiam *there are some too* in deo *ending in deo* quæ *which* di dent *make di*, prandeo *to dine* prandi, et *and* video *to see*, sedeo *to sit*, assideo *to sit by*, sic so strideo *to hiss* stridi.—Quatuor *four* formantur *are formed* in xi *in xi*, sic so frigeo *to be cold* frixi, et *and* augeo *to increase* auxi, luceo *to shine* lugeo quoque *and to grieve* habent *have* luxi.—Syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is repeated* quatuor his *infra in these four verbs below*; namque *for* pendeo *to hang* vult *will have* pependi, mordeoque *and to bite* momordi, spondeo *to promise* sponspendi, tondeo *to shear* vult habere *will have* totondi.—Tria verba *three verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam passivi solam *the form of the passive voice only*: gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus, soleo *to be accustomed* solitus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus; quin *moreover* pauca *a few* carent *want* perfecto *the perfect*, ut as mœreo *to grieve* monstrat *shows*, atque *and* aveo *to wish*, atque *and* hebeo *to be dull*, scateo *to be full*, vegeo *to be vigorous*, immineoque *and to impend*, atque *and* aliæ voces *other words* quas *which* usus *practice* rite docebit *will shew thoroughly.* (v. 26—39.)

III. TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the perfect tense* ut as manifestum *is shewn* hic *here.* (v. 40.)

Bo fit *is made* psi, ceu *as* scribo *to write* scripsi, sed *but* bibo *to drink*, lambo *to lick*, et *and* scabo *to scratch*, faciunt *make* bi, quin *moreover* occumbo *to lie down* dat *makes* occubui. (v. 41, 42.)

Co fit *becomes* xi, ut as dico *to say* dixi, sed *but* parco *to spare* peperci, et *and* vinco *to conquer* vici, sic so ico *to strike*, vetus *an old word*, facit *makes* ici. (v. 43, 44.)

Sco fit becomes vi, ut as *pasco to feed* pavi; attamen *but* inde profectum *its compound* compesco *to check* format *forms* compescui, et *and* adijce *add* disco *to learn* quod *which* semper *always* format *forms* didici, poscoque *and to ask* forms *forms* posposci.—Verba inceptiva *inceptive verbs* sequuntur *follow* formam *the form* simplicium *of the simple verbs* *from which they are derived*, nam *for* caleo *to be warm* format *forms* calui,calescoque *and to begin to be warm* makes also calui; glisco *to grow*, atque *and* fatisco *to split* jactant *boast of* profectum nullum *no perfect tense*, cum paucis aliis *with a few others* rite profectis *regularly derived* a nomine *from a noun*.

(v. 45—51.)

Do fit becomes si, ut as *claudio to shut* clausi, cedo *to yield* geminans s *doubling the s* dat *makes* cessi; pauca *a few* dabunt *will make* di, ut as *scando to climb*, prehendo *to take*, accendo *to inflame*, cudo *to hammer*, mando *to eat*, defendo *to defend*, edo *to eat*, pando *to lay open*, et *and* strido *to creak*, sideo *to sit*; findo *to cleave*, et *and* fundo *to pour* abjiciunt n *throw away n*, inde thence come fidi, fudi; rudo *to brag* dat *gives* rudivi, rarum *a rare form*: quinetiam *moreover* paucis *in a few words* syllaba prima *the first syllable* geminatur *is doubled*, pendo *to weigh* makes pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, cædo *to beat* cæcidi, et *and* cado *to fall* dat *gives* cæcidi, tundo *to beat*, tutudi; ultima vero *but the last syllable* plerumque *usually* geminatur *is doubled* in natis *in words compounded* a *of* do *to give*, ut as *edo to utter*, abdo *to hide*, condo *to build*, reddoque *and to restore*, et *and* cætera *the rest* formant *form* didi: videbis tamen *yet you will see* abscondo *that to hide* formare *forms* abscondi, fido *to trust* habebit *will have* formam *the form* passivi *of the passive*, fisis sum. (v. 52—63.)

Go, & is made xi, ut as *jungo to join* junxi; sed *but* r *the letter r* ante *before* go, vult *will have* si; ut as *spargo to sprinkle* sparsi; lego *to read* legi, et *and* ago *to act* facit *makes* egi; et *and* frango *to break* fregi, pango *pro for* figere *to fasten* panxi; inde tamen *but its compounds* semper tibi dabunt *will always give you* -pegi; cùm *when* cernis *you see* pepigi, præsens *the present tense* plerumque *usually* est *is* paciscor *to covenant*; tangoto *touch* dat *gives* tetigi, pungo *to prick* dabit *will give* ordine *in order* pupugi, sed *but* compôsta *its*

*compounds make -punxi; ambigo to doubt, vergo to incline, carent are without perfecto the perfect tense.* (v. 64—70.)

Guo, format tibi *forms xi; ceu as restinguo to extinguish restinxi.* (v. 71.)

Ho, fit *is made xi; ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shews, et and veho to carry vexi.* (v. 72.)

Lo, fit *is made ui; ceu as colo to till colui: excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument psalli; excello to excel sequitur follows legem the regular rule, sed but percello to strike habebit will have perculi; pello to drive away dat makes pepuli, fallo to deceive fefelli, vello to pluck dat tibi gives you sæpius usually velli, est ubi sometimes vulsi.* (v. 73—76.)

Mo, fit *becomes mpsi; ceu as como to deck the hair compsi, at but emo to buy facit makes emi. Deinde then vomoque both to vomit, fremoque and to roar, gemoque and to groan, tremoque and to tremble sequuntur follow; quæ which dabunt will give perfecta their perfects per ui in ui; et and premo to press dabit will give pressi.* (v. 77—79.)

No, fit *becomes vi; ceu as sino to permit sivi; quin moreover cerno to see ordine mutato changing the order of its letters makes crevi, sic so does sperno to despise, sternoque and to strew makes stravi, gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini; cujus compôsta whose compounds dant ui make ui, ut as concino to sing together concinui.* (v. 80—83.)

Po, fit *becomes psi; ut as sculpo to carve sculpsi, carpo quoque also to gather makes carpsi; sed but rumpo to break semper always format makes rupi, strepo to roar strepui.* (v. 84, 85.)

Quo, fit *becomes xi; ceu as coquo to cook coxi, excipe except linquo to leave liqui.* (v. 86.)

Ro, fit *becomes si, sæpe s geminato s being often doubled, quod which gero to carry monstrat shews, dans making gessi; tero to rub dat makes trivi, curroque and to run makes curri, quæro to seek quæsivi, neque enim nor let fero to bear prætereatur be passed over, quod which habet has tuli, sero to sow dat makes sevi, sed but compôsta ejus its compounds insero to ingraft or insert among, consero to plant together or to connect, dant make et both -sevi et and -serui, formâ the form*

mutatâ *varying ad sensum with the sense*; sed *but desero to desert* item *also assero to assert* formant *form ui tantum only ui*; furo *to rage* dat *gives nullum præteritum no perfect tense*.  
(v. 87—93.)

So, fit *becomes si*; ut *as viso to go to see* visi; adjice *add pinso to grind* pinsi, item *also making* pinsui; depso *quoque visso to knead* depsui; at *but omne -esso every word ending in -esso* dat *gives -essivi*, ut *as arcesso to send for*, incesso *to attack*, atque *and lacesso to provoke* probat *proves*.  
(v. 94—96.)

To, fit *is made ti*; ut *as verto to turn* verti; sic *so verso ordine changing the order of the letters* obstiti *fluit proceeds* ab *from* obsisto *to oppose*, adde *add* insisto *to stand upon*, resisto *to resist*; mitto *to send* dat *gives* misi, peto *to ask* vult *formare will form* petivi, sterto *to snore* habet *has* stertui, meto *to reap* messui: ab *from -ecto* fit *is made -exi*, ut *as flecto to bend* flexi; necto *to weave* dat *gives* nexui, habetque *and it has* nexi, sic *so pecto to comb* dat *gives* pexui, habet *quoque and also has* pexi.  
(v. 97—102.)

Vo, fit *is made vi*; ut *as volvo to roll* volvi; excipe *except vivo to live* vixi.  
(v. 103.)

Xo, habet *has* xui; ut *as texo to weave*, quod *which* habebit *will have* texui, monstrat *sheweth*.  
(v. 104.)

Cio, fit *is made ci*; ut *as facio to do* feci; quoque *also* jacio *to cast* jeci: allicio *to allure* allexi, elicio *to elicit* format *tibi* gives *you* elicui. Aspicio *to behold* makes *as* pexi, sic *so* conspicio *to see* inspicioque *and to inspect*.  
(v. 105—107.)

Dio, fit *is made di*; ut *as fodio to dig* fodi. } (v. 108.)  
Gio, fit *is made gi*; ceu *as fugio to fly* fugi. }

Pio, fit *is made pi*; ut *as capio to take* cepi; ecce *behold* cupio *to desire* cupivi, et *and* rapio *to snatch* rapui, sapio *to savour or taste* sapui, atque *and* sapivi.  
(v. 109, 110.)

Pario *to bring forth* dat *gives* peperi, concutio *to shake* dat *gives* concussi.  
(v. 111.)

Denique *finally*, Uo fit *is made ui*; ut *as statuo to erect* statui; pluo *to rain* format *formeth* pluvi, sive *or* plui, sed *but* struo *to build* makes *struxi*, fluo *to flow* fluxi.  
(v. 112, 113.)

Compositum *the compound verb sequitur follows* simplex

*the simple one, sed but semper always syllaba a syllable quam which simplex the simple verb geminat redoubles non geminatur is not doubled compôsto in the compound.*

(v. 114, 115.)

IV. QUARTA *the fourth conjugation dat makes is in the present tense, ivi in the preterperfect; ut as scio scis to know, scivi, monstrat tibi shews you. Excipias you may except venio to come dans making veni, raucio to be hoarse rausi, item also haurio to draw hausi, farcio to stuff farsci, fulcio to prop fulsi, sarcio to patch sarsci, sentio to feel sensi, sepio to hedge sepsi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi; tum then tria verba three verbs formantur are formed per ui in ui, salio to leap, aperio to open, operioque and to cover; comperio to find mutat changes rio, in ri into ri, reperioque and to find; ferio to strike atque and superbio to be proud præbent afford perfectum nullum no perfect tense.*

(v. 116—123.)

V. VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense præteritique and of the perfect tense in e into e; damno to condemn, lacto to suckle, sacro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, (vetus an old word) capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, gradiorque and to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, sic so farcio to stuff, spargo to sprinkle.*

(v. 124—128.)

VI. HÆC *these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, tango to touch, cano to sing, placeo to please, teneo to hold, sic so cædo cecidi to beat, quæro to seek, egeo to want, fateor to confess, taceo to hold one's peace, sapio to savour, rapioque and to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i; ut as, rapio to snatch, eripio to take away by force.*

(v. 129—133.)

*Sed but hæc duo these two compounds, complaceo to please, cum with perplaceo to please very much, benè servant steadily keep usum the use simplicis verbi of the simple verb.*

(v. 133, 134.)

Composita *the compounds* à *of* verbis *the verbs* calco *to tread*, salto *to leap or dance*, mutant *change* a per u a into u; conculco *to tread upon*, inculco *to tread in*, resulto *to rebound*, demonstrant *shew id that* tibi *to you*. (v. 135, 136.)

Composita *the compounds* à *of* claudio *to shut*, quatio *to shake*, lavo *to wash*, rejiciunt a *cast away a*; occludo *to shut against*, excludo *to shut out*, à *from* claudio *to shut*, docet *teaches id this*; que *and* percutio *to strike*, excutio *to strike out*, à *from* quatio *to shake*; à *from* lavo *to wash*, nata *the compounds* proluo *to drench*, diluo *to wash out*.

(v. 137—139.)

Plaudo *to applaud* mutat *changes* au into o, quod *which* displodo *to burst* monstrat tibi *shews you*. (v. 140.)

VII. SI *if* componas *you compound* hæc *these verbs*, ago *to act*, emo *to buy*, sedeo *to sit*, rego *to rule*, frango *to break*, et *and* capio *to take*, jacio *to cast*, lacio *to allure*, specio *to behold*, premo *to press*, pango *to fasten*, sibi mutant *they change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* in i into i, nunquam *never* præteriti *of the perfect tense*; ceu *as of* frango *to break*, refringo *to break open*, makes refregi; incipio *to begin* incepti, à *of* capio *to take*: sed *but* pauca *let a few* notentur *be marked*; namque *for* perago *to finish* sequitur *follows* suum *simplex its simple verb*, que *and* satago *to be busy*; atque *and* dego *to live*, ab *from* ago *to act*, dat *makes* degi, cogo *to bring together* coëgi; sic *so* à *from* rego *to rule*, pergo *to go forward*, makes perrexii, quoque *and* surgo *to rise* vult *will have* surrexi; mediâ syllabâ *the middle syllable* præsentis *of the present tense* ademptâ *being taken away*.

(v. 141—149.)

Ista quatuor composita *these four compound verbs* à *of* pango *to fix or fasten* retinent a *keep a*, depango *to fix in the ground*, oppango *to fasten against*, circumpango *to fasten about*, atque *and* repango *to fasten again*. (v. 150, 151.)

Facio *to do* variat *changeth* nil *nothing*, nisi *unless* præposito præëunte a *preposition goes before*: olfacio *to smell out* docet *teaches id that*, cum *with* calfacio *to make hot*, que *and* inficio *to infect*.

(v. 152, 153.)

Nata *the compounds* à *of* lego *to read*, re, per, præ, sub,

trans, ad, præeunte *going before*, servant *keep* vocalem *the vowel* præsentis *of the present tense*; cætera *the rest* mutant *change it* in *i* into *i*; de quibus *of which* hæc *these* tantum *only*, intelligo *to understand*, diligo *to love*, negligo *to neglect*, faciunt *make* præteritum *their perfect tense* lexi; reliqua omnia *all the rest* legi. (v. 154—157.)

VIII. NUNC *now* discas *you may learn* formare *to form* supinum *the supine* ex præterito *from the perfect tense*. (v. 158.)

Unum perfectum *one perfect tense* in *bi*, bibi *to drink*, vult formare *will form* bibitum. (v. 159.)

Ci, fit *is made* ctum, ut *as* vici *to overcome* victum, testatur *shews*, et *and* ici *to smite* dans *making* ictum, feci *to do* factum, quoque *also* jeci *to cast* jactum. (v. 160-1.)

Di, fit *is made* sum; ut *as* vidi *to see* visum: quædam *some* geminant *s double s*; ut *as* pandi *to open* passum, sedi *to sit* sessum, adde *add* scidi *to cut* quod *which* dat *makes* scissum, atque *and* fidi *to cleave* fissum, quoque *also* fodi *to dig* fossum. (v. 162—164.)

Prima syllaba *the first syllable* non geminatur *is not doubled* ullis supinis *in any supines*: idque *and this* totondi *to clip or shear*, dans *making* tonsum, docet *shews*, atque *and* cecidi *to beat*, quod *which* maketh cæsum, et *and* cecidi *to fall*, quod *which* dat *maketh* casum, atque *and* tetendi *to bend*, quod *which* maketh tensum, et *also* tentum, tutudi *to beat or pound* tunsum, atque *and* dedi *to give*, quod *which* jure *by right* poscit *requires* datum, sic *so* quot *as many as* nascuntur *are derived* ab illo *from it*, ut *as* addidi *to add* habet *has* additum, atque *and* momordi *to bite* vult *will* have morsum. (v. 165—170.)

Gi, fit *is made* ctum; ut *as* legi *to read* lectum; pegi *to fasten* que *and* pepigi *to covenant* dant *make* pactum, fregi *to break* fractum, quoque *also* tetigi *to touch* tactum, egi *to act* actum, pupugi *to prick* punctum; fugi *to flee* dat *makes* fugitum. (v. 171—173.)

Li, fit *becomes* sum; ut *as* pepuli *to drive away* pulsum; sic *so* rite *regularly* fefelli *to deceive* falsum, perculi *to strike* habet *has* perculsum, neve *and let not* tuli *to bear* aufugiat *te*

*escape you, cui in the case of which word* *latum, semper always venit has come in usum into use.* (v. 174—176.)

Mi, ni, pi, qui, sumunt *take tum, velut as manifestum is manifest hîc here: emi to buy emptum, veni to come ventum, cecini, à from cano to sing cantum, cepi, à from capio to take captum, quoque also cœpi to begin cœptum, rupi, à from rumpo to break ruptum; quoque also liqui to leave lictum.* (v. 177—180.)

Ri, fit *is made sum; ut as verri to brush versum; excipe except peperi to bring forth young partum.* (v. 181.)

Si, fit *is made sum; ut as visi to go to see visum; quin moreover misi to send formabit will form missum, ss geminato s being doubled; excipe except fulsi to prop fultum, hausi to draw haustum, sarsi to patch sartum, quoque also farsi to stuff fartum, ussi to burn ustum, gessi to bear gestum; torsi to wreath vindicat sibi claims for itself tortum, sic so indulsi to indulge format tibi forms as you see indultum.* (v. 182—186.)

Psi, fit *is made ptum; ut as scripsi to write scriptum, quoque also sculpsi to engrave sculptum.* (v. 187.)

Ti, vult *formare will form sum; ut as verti to turn versum; cùm when -stiti habet has supinum a supine erit it will be -statum, sed but vix valebis you will scarcely be able reperire to find it.* (v. 188, 189.)

Vi, fit *is made tum; ut as flavi to blow flatum: excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum, atque and lavatum; potavi to drink facit makes potum, venivi a from veneo to be sold venum; favi to favour dat makes fautum, cavi to beware cautum; à from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum; discite learn, sepelivi to bury sepultum, et and singultivi to sob semper habebit will always have singultum; solvi, à from solvo to loose solutum, volvi, à from volvo to roll volutum.* (v. 190—196.)

Quod *a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itum; ut as domui to tame domitum: excipe except quodvis verbum every verb in uo, quia because semper formabit it will always form ui in utum ui in utum; ut as exui to put off exutum: deme except rui, à from ruo to rush, dans making ruitum; secui to*



*cut vult will have sectum, necui to slay nectum, que and fricui to rub frictum, item also miscui to mingle mistum, quoque also docui to teach doctum; torrui to roast habet hath tostum, adjiceque and add continui to contain contentum, consului to consult consultum, alui to feed altum, que and alitum; sic so salui to leap saltum, colui to till, quoque also occului to hide, cultum; pinsui to pound or grind habet hath pistum, rapui to snatch raptum, que and serui, à from sero to set in order, vult will have sertum, sic so quoque also texui to weave habet hath textum.* (v. 197—206.)

*Censui to judge habet hath censum, messui to reap habebit will have quoque also messum; item also nexui to knit nexum, sic so quoque also pexui to comb habet hath pexum.* (v. 207, 208.)

*Xi, fit is made ctum; ut as vinxi to bind vinctum: quædam some abjiciunt n cast away n; ut as finxi to form or fashion semper dabit will always give fictum, adjice add pinxi to paint dans giving pictum, strinxi to bind fast strictum, quoque also rinxi to grin rictum.* (v. 209—211.)

*Flexi to bend, plexi to twist, fixi to fasten, dant make xum et and fluo to flow fluxum.* (v. 212.)

**IX. QUODQUE** compositum supinum *every compound supine formatur is formed ut as simplex the simple supine, quamvis although eadem syllaba the same syllable non stet does not continue semper always utrique to them both. Composita the compounds à of tunsum to pound, n demptâ by taking away n, make tusum; à of ruitum to rush, i mediâ the middle letter i demptâ being taken away, fit is made rutum; et and quoque also à of saltum to leap sultum. Composita the compounds à of sero to sow, quando when format it forms satum, dant make situm.* (v. 213—217.)

*Hæc these supines, captum to take, factum to do, jactum to cast, raptum to snatch, mutant a per e change a into e; et and cantum to sing, partum to bring forth young, sparsum to sprinkle, carptum to crop, adjice add fartum to stuff.* (v. 218, 219.)

*A from nosco to know duo these two compounds tantum*

*only*, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again*, habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum : noscitur, jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use*. (v. 220, 221.)

X. VERBA in or *verbs ending in or* admittunt *take* præteritum *their perfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine*, u verso u *being turned* per us *into us*, et *and* sum, vel or fui, consociato *being added*; ut *as* à of lectu *to be read* lectus sum, vel or fui, *I have been read*: at *but* horum of *these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent*, nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted*. (v. 222—225.)

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus natum *its compound* perpetior *to endure*, formans *forming* perpassus; fateorque *and to own* dat *makes* fassus, confiteor *to confess* confessus, gradiorque *and to step* dat *makes* gressus, metior *to measure* dat *gives* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus. (v. 226—229.)

Ordior, pro *for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus, vel or nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus, simul *also* irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus, vel or fruitus; junge *add* misereri *to have pity* miseratus, atque *and* miseritus; a *from* tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* tutus, que *and* tuitus; adde *add* locutus, à of loquor *to speak*, et *and* adde *add* secutus, à of sequor *to follow*. (v. 230—236.)

Experior *to try* facit *maketh* expertus; paciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus, apiscor *to obtain*, (quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb*) aptus sum, undè *from whence* adipiscor *to get* adeptus. (v. 237—239.)

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experrectus sum; et *and* quoque *also* hæc *these*, comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, moriorque *and to die* mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise*, quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its perfect tense* ortus. (v. 240—243.)

Medeor *to remedy*, vescor *to feed upon*, liquorque *and to*

*melt carebunt will want perfecto the perfect tense ; sic quoque so also diffiteor to disown, sic so ringor to grin, sic so reminiscor to remember.* (v. 244, 245.)

XI. HÆC *these verbs habent have præteritum a perfect tense activæ of the active et and passivæ vocis of the passive voice.* (v. 246)

Nubo *to be married* nupsi, que *and* nupta sum, placeo *to please* dat *gives* placui et *and* placitus, et *and* libet *it pleaseth* libuit libitum, et *and* adde *add* licet *it is lawful*, quod *which* makes licuit licitum ; tædet *it wearieeth*, quod *which* dat *makes* tæduit, et *and* pertæsum ; adde *add* pudet *it shameth* faciens *making* puduit, que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieveth*, quod *which* tibi *formats* forms you piguit, que *and* pigitum. (v. 247—251.)

XII. HÆC *verba these verbs rarò seldom aut or nunquam never retinebunt will have supinum their supine : lambo to lick, mico micui to glitter, rudo to bray as an ass, scabo to claw, parco peperci to spare, dispesco to drive from pasture, posco to require, compesco to restrain, atque and adjice add disco to learn, dego to live, ango to throttle, sugo to suck, lingo to lick, ningo to snow, que and satago to be busy, psallo to play on an instrument, volo to be willing, nolo to be unwilling, malo to be more willing, tremo to tremble, strideo strido to scream, flaveo to be yellow, liveo to be black and blue, avet to covet, paveo to dread, conniveo to wink, fervet to be hot. Compositum a compound à of nuo to nod ; ut as, renuo to refuse : à of cado to fall ; ut as, accido to happen ; præter except occido to fall down, quod which facit makes occasum, que and recido to fall back recasum : respuo to refuse, sic so metuo to fear, cluo to shine or to be famous frigeo to be cold, calveo to be bald, sterto to snore, sic etiam so also timeo to fear ; sic so luceo to shine, et and arceo to drive away, cujus composita whose compounds habent have -ercitum ; sic so nata the compounds à of gruo to cry like crane, ut as ingruo to invade ; et and quæcunque neutra watever neuters secundæ of the second conjugation formantur are formed in ui ; excipias you may except oleo to smell, dolo*

*to be in pain, placeo to please, que and taceo to hold one's peace, pareo to obey, item also careo to want, noceo to hurt, jaceo to lie down, que and lateo to lie hid, et also valeo to be in health, caleo to be hot; namque for hæc these verbs gaudent supino have their supines.* (v. 252—266.)

## SYNTAXIS CONSTRUED.

1. VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero *in number* et *and* personâ *person* : ut *as*, Ego loquor *I speak*. Homineo *men* audiunt *hear*.

2. Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* omittitur *is omitted*, nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphasis *energy of expression* : ut *as*, Ego *I* ejeci *drove out* reges *kings*, vos *ye* introducitis *are introducing* tyrannos *tyrants*. Auditis *do ye hear*, an *or* amabilis *insania* *does a pleasing delusion* ludit *me deceive me?* Videor *I seem* audire *to hear* et *and* errare *to be wandering* per *among* pios *lucos* *holy groves*. Possunt *they are able* quia *because* videntur *they seem to themselves* posse *to be able*.

3. Aliquando *sometimes* verbum *a verb* infinitivi *modi* *of the infinitive mood* usurpatur *is used* pro nominativo *for the nominative* vel *or* pro *for* accusativo *casu* *the accusative case* nominis *of a noun* : ut *as*, Didicisse *to have learnt* ingenuas artes *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens* much *mores* men's *manners*, nec *sinit* *and suffers them not* esse *to be* feros *brutal*. Quod *crimen* *what crime* dicis *do you say* meum *is mine*, præter *except* amâsse *to have loved?*

4. Cùm *when* duo *sunt* nomina *there are two nouns* diversarum personarum *of different persons*, verbum *the verb* concordat *agrees* cum *with* personâ *digniore* *the more worthy person* : ut *as*, Si *if* tu *you* et *and* Tulla *Tullia* valetis *are well* ego *I* et *and* suavissimus *Cicero* *our dearest Cicero* valemus *are well*.

5. Cùm *when* unum *verbum* *one verb* sequitur *follows* duo *aut* *plura* nomina *two or more nouns* singularis *numeri* *of the singular number*, plerumque *usually* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural*, si *if* agitur *one is speaking* de animantibus *of living objects*, si *if* de rebus *one is speaking of things*, vel *in plurali* *the verb is put either in the plural* vel *in singulari* *or in the singular* : ut *as*, Castor *et* *and* Pollux *visi sunt* *were seen* pugnare *to fight* ex equis *on horseback* apud *Regillum* *at lake Regillus*. Cùm *when* tempus *the occasion* necessitasque *and necessity* postulat *requires*, decertandum *est* *one must fight* manu *with one's own hand*. Beneficium *kindness* et *and* gratia *gratitude* conjungunt *join* homines *men* inter *se* together

6. Cùm *when* nomen *a noun* singularis numeri *of the singular number* indicat *denotes multitudinem a multitude*, sæpe jungitur *it is often joined* verbo plurali *to a plural verb*: ut *as*, Turba *the crowd* tenent *occupy* atria *the halls*, leve vulgus *the fickle mob* veniunt *come euntque and go*. Uterque eorum *each of them* educunt *draw out* exercitum *the:r army* ex castris *from the camp*.

(a.) Sic *so* et *also* adverbium *the adverb* partim *partly* aliquando *sometimes* usurpatur *is used* cum *with* genitivo plurali nominis *the genitive plural of the noun*, ceu *as* nomen ipsum *the noun itself*: ut *as*, Partim eorum *part of them* sunt *are* timidi *cowardly*, partim *part* aversi *disaffected* a republicâ *to the republic*. Partim eorum *part of these things* ficta sunt *aperte were openly invented*, partim *part* effutita *uttered temere at random*.

7. Verbum *a verb* positum *placed* inter *between* duos nominativos *two nominative cases* ejusdem personæ *of the same person* sed *but* diversorum numerorum *of different numbers* potest concordare *may agree* cum *with* alterutro *either*, sed *but* fere *usually* concordat *does agree* cum posteriore *with the latter*: ut *as*, Iræ *the quarrels* amantium *of lovers* integratio est *are the renewing* amoris *of love*. Pectus quoque *her breast* also fiunt robora *becomes oak*. Omnia *everything* pontus erant *was sea*.

8. Pro nominativo *instead of a nominative case* accusativus *an accusative* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* dicendi *of saying*, audiendi *of hearing*, sciendi *of knowing*, putandi *of thinking*, et similia *and the like*, et verbum *sum and the verb sum*, verbo infinitivo *a verb in the infinitive mood* sequente *following*: ut *as*, Audivit *he heard* nos *that we* venire *were coming*. Scribit *he writes* word bellum *that the war* confectum esse *is finished*. Fama est *a report exists* Enceladum *that Enceladus* urgeri *is overwhelmed* mole hâc *by this mass*.

(a.) Infinitivus modus *the infinitive mood* futuri temporis *of the future tense* plerumque *generally* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* sperandi *of hoping* et *and* promittendi *of promising*: ut *as*, Promitto *I promise* me *that I* observaturum esse *will observe* hæc *these things*. Spero *I hope* fore *ut* contingat *id that that will happen* nobis *to us*.

9. ADJECTIVA *adjectives*, participia *participles*, et *and* pronomina *pronouns*, concordant *agree* cum *with* substantivo

*the substantive genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case : ut as, Rara avis an uncommon bird in terris in the world, simillimaque and very much like nigro cygno a black swan.*

10. Cùm *when* verbum *a verb* infinitivi modi *of the infinitive mood, aut or pars sententiæ part of a sentence* usurpatur *is used pro substantivo instead of a substantive, habetur it is considered* neutrius generis *of the neuter gender : ut as, Irasci to be angry est is humanum a human error.*

11. Cùm *when* plura sunt substantiva *there are many substantives diversorum generum of different genders, adjectivum the adjective* concordat *agrees cum with digniore genere the more worthy gender, si if agitur one is speaking de animantibus of living objects, et and si if ponitur it is put in numero plurali in the plural number : ut as, Pater mihi my father et mater and mother mortui sunt have been dead jampridem long since.*

12. Si vero *but if* agitur *de rebus things are spoken of, adjectivum the adjective sæpe ponitur is often put in neutro in the neuter gender : ut as, Secundæ res prosperity, honores honours, imperia commands, victoriæ victories, fortuita sunt depend on chance.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees cum proximo substantivo with the nearest substantive cujuscunque generis sit of whatever gender it is, præsertim especially cùm when ponitur it is put in singulari numero in the singular number : ut as, Animus the intention, et and consilium the purpose, et and sententia the opinion civitatis of the state posita est have been expressed in legibus in the laws.*

13. Aliquando *sometimes* adjectivum *the adjective* concordat *agrees cum substantivo with a substantive quod which significatur is implied, non cum eo not with that quod which exprimitur is expressed : ut as, Auxilia Thracum the auxiliary force of the Thracians, cùm as pars part adjacerent lay close munitionibus to the fortifications, cæsi sunt were slain.*

14. Aliquando *sometimes* nullum substantivum *no substantive* exprimitur *is expressed, sed but adjectivum the adjective* usurpatur *is used pro substantivo for a substantive : ut as, Loquor I am saying mira strange things. Multi many men libenter willingly oppetierunt mortem have sought death pro patriâ for their country.*

15. RELATIVUM *the relative* concordat *agrees cum with* antecedente *the antecedent* genere *in gender*, numero *in number*, et *and* personâ *in person* : ut *as*, Ego sum *I am* ille consul *that consul* qui *who* servavi *saved* Romam *Rome*. Contemnimus *we despise* hominem *a man* qui *who* amat *loves* mendacia *lies*.

16. Quoniam *since* relativum *the relative* adjectivum est *is an adjective*, sequitur *it follows* easdem leges *the same laws* de genere *as to gender* quas *as* adjectivum *an adjective* : ut *as*, Eæ fruges *these crops* atque fructus *and fruits* quos *which* terra *the earth* gignit *produces*. Duo importuna prodigia *the two prodigies of wickedness* quos *whom* improbitas *their profligacy* addixerat *had bound* tribuno plebis *to the tribune of the people*. Ubi est *where is* illud scelus *that wicked man* qui *who* perdidit me *has undone me*?

17. Aliquando *sometimes* sententia *a sentence* aut *or* pars sententiæ *part of a sentence* ponitur *is put* pro *for* antecedente *an antecedent* : ut *as*, Veni *I came* ad eam *to her* in tempore *in season*, quod *which* est *is* rerum omnium primum *the main business of all*.

18. Relativum *a relative* collocatum *placed* inter *between* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversorum generum *of different genders* et *and* numerorum *numbers* concordat *agrees* sæpe *often* cum *with* posteriore *the latter* substantive : ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum globum *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

(a.) Relativum *a relative* sæpe ponitur *is often put* Latinè *in Latin* ubi *where* in nostro sermone *in our language* utimur *we use* pronomine *a pronoun* cum conjunctione *with a conjunction* : ut *as*, Si *if*, pater *O father*, scisses *you had known* hoc *this*, cujus pietatis es *such is your piety*, nemo *no one* antecessisset *te would have outdone you*. Et tamen *and yet*, quæ jam patientia nostra est *so great is our patience*, spernimur *we are despised* in cœlo *in heaven*. Pater tuus si viveret *if your father were alive*, quâ severitate fuit *such was his severity*, tu profecto *you in truth* non viveres *would not be alive*. Jussit hoc *he ordered this*, quod si fecissem *but if I had done it* perdidissem *I should have ruined* omnia *every thing*.

19. Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *a relative* concordat *agrees cum with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive* : ut *as*, Hoc *this* maxime interest vestrâ *is of the greatest consequence to you*, qui *who* vixistis *have lived* cum summâ integritate *with the greatest integrity*.



(a.) Cum *when* relativum *the relative* refertur *is referred* ad nomen *to a noun* multitudinis *of multitude*, aliquando *sometimes* ponitur *it is put* in plurali *in the plural*: ut *as*, Cæsar Cæsar præmittit *sends on* omnem equitatum *all the cavalry* qui videant *to see* quas in partes *in which direction* hostes *t enemy* iter faciant *is marching*.

20. Si *if* nominativus *a nominative case* interponatur *is p between* relativo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb*, relativum *the relative* regitur *is governed* a verbo *by the verb*, aut *or* a aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ *which* locatur *is placed* in oratione *in the sentence* cum verbo *with the verb*: ut *as*, Peto *I demand* te *you* quem *whom* merui *I have deserved*. Cujus numen *whose deity* adoro *I adore*.

(a.) Cùm *when* relativum *the relative* adjungitur *is joined* superlativo *to an adjective in the superlative degree*, superlativum *the superlative* ponitur *is put* in eodem sententiæ membro *in the same member of the sentence* quo *as* relativum *the relative*: ut *as*, Themistocles Themistocles misit *sent servum* quem fidelissimum *habuit the most faithful slave* he had ad Xerxem *to Xerxes*.

21. DUO substantiva *two substantives* rei ejusdem *meaning the same thing* ponuntur *are put* in eodem casu *in the same case*: ut *as*, Opes riches effodiuntur *are dug up*, irritamenta *the incentives* malorum *to evil*.

22. Quum *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversæ significationis *of a different signification* concurrunt *meet together*, posterius *the latter* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive case*: ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases* quantum *as much as* ipsia pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases*.

23. Adjectivum *an adjective* in neutro genere *of the neuter gender* positum *put* pro substantivo *instead of a substantive*, postulat *requires* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Dedi *I wrote* hoc literarum *this letter* ad te *to you*. Venerant *they had come* ad extremum *to the extremity* inopiæ *of want*. Ferimur *we are borne on* per opaca locorum *through shady places*.

24. Interdum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case* ponitur tantum *is set alone*, priore substantivo *the former substantive* subaudito *being understood* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis*:

ut *as*, *Ventum erat we had come ad Vestæ to the temple of Vesta. Hasdrubal Hasdrubal Gisgonis the son of Gisgo.*

25. Substantivum *a substantive denotans denoting qualitatem quality, adjuncto adjectivo if an adjective be added, ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive vel or in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Titus Titus fuit was tantæ facilitatis of such great kindness, ut that negaret quicquam nemini he never denied anything to any one. Agesilaus Agesilaus fuit was staturâ humili of low stature et corpore exiguo and of a slight body.*

(*a.*) Substantiva *substantives derivata a verbis derived from verbs interdum sometimes admittunt admit eosdem casus the same cases post se after them quos as verba the verbs exigunt require a quibus from which derivantur they are derived: ut as, Spe all hope reditionis of a return domum home sublatâ being taken away. Justitia justice est is obtemperatio obedience scriptis legibus to written laws.*

26. Opus *need et and usus need exigunt require ablativum an ablative case rei of the thing, cum dativo with a dative personæ of the person: ut as, Opus est nobis we have need auctoritate tuâ of your authority. Non accepit he would not receive pecuniam money ab iis from them, quâ of which sibi esset he had nihil usus no need.*

(*a.*) Autem *but opus, videtur seems quandoque sometimes poni to be put adjectivè adjectively pro for necessarius necessary: ut as, Dux a leader et and auctor an adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us.*

27. ADJECTIVA *adjectives vel or participia participles posita put pro adjectivis for adjectives quæ which significant signify cupidinem desire, scientiam knowledge, memoriam memory, timorem fear, diligentiam diligence, participationem participation, atque and contraria the contraries iis to these, um plurimis aliis with many others quæ which denotant denote qualitatem a quality vel motum aliquem or some passion animi of the mind, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Pythagoras Pythagoras appellavit called studiosos those who were fond sapientiæ of wisdom philosophos philosophers. Mens a mind conscia recti conscious of rectitude ridet laughs at mendacia the lies famæ of rumour. Estote be ye jam nunc even now memores mindful venturæ senectæ of coming old age. Mens hominum the mind of man nescia ignorant fati of fate*

sortisque futuræ and his future lot. Romani the Romans fuerunt were appetentes eager after gloriæ glory præter beyond cæteras gentes all other nations. Serpit he creeps humi on the ground tutus nimium too cautious timidusque and afraid procellæ of a storm. Vir a man diligentissimus most diligent in omni officii every duty. Cæteræ the others possunt can habere have domi at home participem one who shares omnium fortunarum all their fortunes. Sæpe often anus an old woman potens voti having gained her wish redivit returns.

(a.) Ex his of these particeps sharing in interdum sometimes jungitur is joined dativo to a dative case personæ of the person : ut as, Mater the mother particeps marito sharing with her husband in plerisque operibus in most of the toils ruris of the country.

(b.) Conscius conscious postulat requires genitivum a genitive case rei of the thing, dativum a dative personæ of the person ; interdum sometimes etiam even jungitur it is joined dativo to a dative rei of the thing, personâ the person subauditâ being understood : ut as, Conscius sibi conscious to himself tanti sceleris of such wickedness. Mens tua your mind non debuit esse ought not to have been conscia an accomplice in huic facinori tanto this enormous wickedness.

28. Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify copiam plenty egestatemve or want exigunt require genitivum a genitive case, interdum sometimes etiam also ablativum an ablative : ut as, Dives rich eqûum in horses, dives rich pictâ vestis in embroidered garments, et and auri gold. Dives rich agris in lands, dives rich nummis in money positis in fœnore laid out at usury. Non indiga not in need of opis nostræ our aid. Omnia everything plena sunt is full errorum of blunders. Animus humanus the human mind est is expers free from utriusque each harum of these things.

29. Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify liberalitatem liberality, vel or contrarium the contrary, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case : ut as, Liberalis liberal pecuniæ of his money. Non parcus not sparing veteris aceti of his old vinegar.

30. Proprius peculiar to, superstes surviving, communis common, cum with paucis aliis a few others, admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, interdum etiam sometimes also dativum a dative : ut as, Libertas liberty est is propria peculiar to populi Romani the Roman people. Sumus superstites we

*have survived aliorum the others. Hoc this commune est is common cupidorum potentiae to those desirous of power cum otiosis with the indolent. Mors death est communis is common omni ætati to every age. Pomponius Pomponius superstes fuit survived Tiberio Tiberius.*

(a.) *Communis vero but communis nunquam jungitur is never joined pronomini personali to a personal pronoun, nisi except dativo in the dative: ut as, Hoc this commune est is common mihi to me tecum and you.*

31. *Alienus foreign to jungitur is joined genitivo to a genitive case, vel or dativo to a dative, vel or ablativo to an ablative, vel or ablativo to an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Censet he thinks hoc this alienum esse to be inconsistent with suæ dignitatis his dignity. Alienus averse ambitioni to ambition. Fraus deceit alienissima est is very foreign to homine the nature of man. Non alienus not averse a studiis to the studies Scævolaë of Scævola.*

32. *Adjectiva adjectives quæ which significant signify crimen crime vel or contrarium the contrary junguntur are joined genitivo to a genitive case: ut as, Regulus Regulus trahebat ad disquisitionem brought to examination collegam his colleague, ut as noxium guilty conjurationis of the conspiracy. Integer innocent vitæ in life, purusque and free from sceleris wickedness.*

33. *Adjectiva adjectives verbalia derived from verbs in ax ending in ax exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Tempus time edax is the consumer rerum of all things.*

34. *Adjectiva partitiva partitive adjectives, numeralia adjectives of number, comparativa comparatives et and superlativa superlatives, et also adjectiva adjectives posita put partitivè partitively, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Accipe take utrum horum which of these two mavis you had rather. Romulus, fuit was primus the first Romanorum regum of the Roman kings. Dextra the right est is fortior the stronger manuum of the hands, Medius the middle est is longissimus the longest digitorum of the fingers. Sancte deorum O sacred deity! sequimur we follow te you.*

(a.) *Usurpantur they are used et also cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, de of, ex of, in among, inter among: ut as, Nam for alter one e vobis of you es Deus is a God, alter the other eris will be. Thales Thales fuit was sapientissimus the wisest in septem of the seven. Solus the only one de superis of the gods qui who vides see tua terga*

*your own back.* Inter mille rates among the thousand ships  
 in a puppis let your vessel be millesima the thousandth.

35. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* quibus *whereby* commodum *advantage*, similitudo *likeness*, aut iis similia *or anything like them* aut contraria *or contrary to them*, aut *or* relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to any thing* significatur *is signified*, postulant *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Si *if* facis *you take care* ut *that* sit *he be* idoneus *serviceable* patriæ *to his country*, utilis *useful* agris *to the lands*. Turba *a multitude* gravis *troublesome* paci *to peace*, que *and* inimica *averse* placidæ *quieti* *to gentle ease*. Similis *like* patri *his father*. Virtus *virtue* fructuosa *full of profit* aliis *to others*, laboriosa *full of toil* ipsi *for itself*. Color *the colour* qui *which* erat *was* albus *white* est *is* nunc *now* contrarius *contrary* albo *to white*. Socrates *Socrates* non fuit *did not use* supplicis *entreaty* iudicibus *to the judges*. Carus *dear* Diis *to the Gods* ipsis *themselves*. Poeta *a poet* est *is* finitimus *very near* oratori *to an orator*.

(a) Quædam *some* ex his *of these* adjectivis, quæ *which* significant *signify* similitudinem *likeness*, et *and* adjectivum *the adjective* affinis *connected with*, junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* genitivo *to a genitive case*: ut *as*, Qui *those who* faciunt *think* mortem *death* leviozem *less momentous*, volunt *insist* esse *that it is* simillimam *very like* somni *sleep*. Affinis *connected with* hujus *culpæ* *this crime*.

36. Natus *born*, habilis *suitable*, commodus *convenient*, utilis *useful*, aptus *fit*, cum *with* quibusdam *with some others*, junguntur *are joined* etiam *also* accusativo *to an accusative case* cum *with* præpositione *a preposition*: ut *as*, Natus *born* ad gloriam *for glory*. Utilis *profitable* ad eam rem *to that business*.

37. Adjectiva verbalia *adjectives derived from verbs* in bilis *ending in bilis*, accepta *taken* passivè *passively*, postulant *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Lucus *iners* a *thick* grove penetrabilis *penetrable* nulli *astro* *by no star*.

38. Participia *participles* passivæ *of the passive voice* postulant *require* dativum *a dative case* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum *with* præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Mæcenas *O Mæcenas*, dicte *celebrated* mihi *by me* primâ *Camœnâ* *in my first poem*, dicende *to be celebrated* summâ *in my last*. Senex *the old man* dictus *sapiens* called *wise* ab Apolline *by Apollo*.

39. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* significantia *signifying* magnitudinem *magnitude* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case* : ut *as*, Fossa *a ditch* undecim pedes lata *eleven feet wide*.

40. Natus *born* cùm *when* refertur *it refers* ad durationem temporis *to the duration of time* exigit *requires* accusativum *an accusative case* : ut *as*, Undeviginti annos natus *nineteen years old*.

41. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* a poetis subjicitur *is put by poets after* adjectivis *adjectives* et *and* participiis *participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice*, præsertim *especially* cùm *when* pars affecta *the part affected* indicatur *is indicated* : ut *as*, Similis Deo *like a God* os *as to his face* humerosque *and shoulders*. Flores *flowers* inscripti *inscribed with nomina the names* regum *of kings*. Stratus prostrate membra *as to one's limbs* nunc *at one time* viridi sub arbuto *under a green arbutus*.

42. Accusativus *an accusative case* sæpe *often* usurpatur *is used* in exclamationibus *in exclamations*, interjectione aliquâ *some interjection* subauditâ *being understood* a quâ *by which* reverà regitur *it is in reality governed* : ut *as*, Me cæcum blind that I am qui non viderim *not to have seen* hæc *this* ante *before*.

43. ADJECTIVA *adjectives* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case* significantem *signifying* causam *the cause*, aut *or* formam *the form*, vel *or* modum *the manner* rei *of a thing* : ut *as*, Par est *he is equal* illi *to him* scelere *in wickedness*, inferior *inferior* industriâ *in energy*. Cæsar, Trojanus *a Trojan* origine *by descent*.

44. Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, præditus *endued*, contentus *content*, extorris *banished*, fretus *relying upon*, cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying* pretium *price*, exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* : ut *as*, Es *you are* dignus *worthy* odio *of hatred*. Mens *the mind* prædita est *is endued* motu sempiterno *with perpetual motion*. Abi *go your way* contentus *contented* sorte tuâ *with your lot*. Extorris *banished from* agro Romano *the Roman territory*. Otium *ease* venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec *nor* auro *with gold*. Quod non opus est *what is not necessary*. carum est *is dear* asse *at a penny*.

(a.) Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* interdum *sometimes* poeticè *in poetry* genitivum *a genitive case* :

ut *as*, *Indignus unworthy magnorum avorum of my great ancestors.*

(*b.*) *Fretus relying upon interdum sometimes, sed but raro seldom, jungitur is joined dativo to a dative case: ut as, Multitudo hostium the multitude of the enemy freta fuit relied nulli rei on nothing præter quam numero except their numbers.*

45. *Natus, satus, cretus, born of, et and similia words of similar meaning exigunt require ablativum an ablative case sine præpositione without a preposition; ortus, editus, born of, require an ablative case, vel either cum with vel or sine præpositione without a preposition: ut as, Nate o you born Deâ of a goddess. Sate o man sprung from sanguine the blood Divûm of the Gods. Hortamur we encourage him fari to tell quo sanguine of what race cretus he is sprung. Generate o son Anchisâ of Anchises, certissima proles most undoubted offspring Deûm of the Gods. Venus Venus orta mari born of the sea præstat mare makes the sea safe eunti for the voyager. Nympha I a nymph edita born de magno flumine of a mighty river contenta fui was content te with you marito for my husband.*

46. *Ablativus rei an ablative case of the thing ad quam to which comparatio comparison fiat is made subjicitur is put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree, vel or else utraque res comparata each of the things which are compared together ponitur is put in eodem casu in the same case, conjunctione quàm the conjunction quàm than interpositâ being inserted: ut as, Argentum silver est is vilis of less value auro than gold, aurum gold virtutibus than virtue. Certa pax certain peace melior est is better tutiorque and safer quàm than sperata victoria a victory hoped for.*

(*a.*) *Cùm when duo adjectiva two adjectives vel or adverbia adverbs comparantur inter se are compared together, et and junguntur are connected per quàm by quàm, ambo both fere ponuntur are usually put in comparativo in the comparative degree: ut as, Concio the speech Publii Æmilii of Publius Æmilius fuit verior quàm gratior was true rather than pleasing populo to the people. Non timeo I am not afraid ne lest videar I should seem evomere hæc to pour forth these things in illum against him libentius quàm verius with more eagerness than truth.*

(*b.*) *Post after minus less, plus, amplius, more, et and longius farther, quàm than interdum sometimes omittitur is*

*omitted, nihilominus nevertheless substantivum the substantive quod sequitur which follows non ponitur is not put in ablativo in the ablative case : ut as, Si if vos ye hodie to-day feceritis make minus less decem plebis tribunos than ten tribunes of the people. Cùm when æger fuisset he had been sick plus annum more than a year. Dixit he said copias that the troops Gallorum of the Gauls abfuisse were absent ab hybernis suis from his winter quarters non longius not further millia passuum octo than eight miles.*

(c.) Aliquando sometimes quàm pro, cum substantivo with a substantive, quàm qui, vel or quàm ut, cum verbo with a verb, subjiciuntur are put after comparativis adjectives in the comparative degree : ut as, Prælium a battle editur takes place atrocius more violent quàm pro numero than one would expect from the number pugnantium of the combatants. Major sum I am too great quàm cui fortuna possit nocere for fortune to be able to injure me. Flumen the river latius erat was too wide quàm ut tranare possent for them to be able to swim across.

47. MEI of me, tui of thee or you, sui of himself, nostri of us, vestri of you, genitivi the genitive cases primitivorum of their primitives, ponuntur are used cùm when persona a person significatur is signified : ut as, Languet she languishes desiderio tui for want of you. Parsque and part tui of you lateat may lie clausa shut up corpore meo in my body. Imago nostri the picture of our person.

48. Meus mine, tuus thine, suus his own, noster ours, vester yours, ponuntur are used cùm when actio action vel or possessio the possession rei of a thing significatur is signified : ut as, Favet he favours desiderio tuo your desire. Imago nostra our picture, (id est that is, quam which nos we possidemus do possess.)

49. Pronomina possessiva possessive pronouns interdum sometimes recipiunt take post se after them hos genitivos these genitive cases, ipsius of himself, solius of him alone, unius of one, omnium of all, plurium of more, paucorum of few, cujusque of every one ; et and also genitivos the genitive cases participiorum of participles qui which referuntur are referred ad primitivum to a primitive subauditum understood : ut as, Dixi I affirmed rempublicam that the state esse salvam was preserved meâ unius operâ by my single service. Meum



solius peccatum *my offence alone* non potest *cannot* corrigi *be amended*. Cùm *whereas* nemo *nobody* legat *reads* scripta mea *the writings of me* fearing recitare *to rehearse* them vulgò *publicly*. Ceperis *you may guess* de studio tuo ipsius *by your own study*. Præstantior *more excellent* in suâ *each in his own* cujusque *skill*. Nostrâ *in the memory of us all*. Respondet *he answers* vestris paucorum laudibus *the praises of you few*.

50. Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his own* sunt *are* reciproca *reciprocals*; id est *that is*, reflectuntur *they have relation* semper *always* ad id *to that* quod *which* præcessit *went before* præcipuum *most to be noted* in sententiâ *in the sentence*: ut *as*, Animus *the mind* sentit *feels* se *that it* moveri *is moved* vi suâ *by its own power* non alienâ *not by that of anything else*. Pater *my father* oravit *me begged* me *ut* venirem *to come* ad se *to him*.

51. Hæc demonstrativa *these pronouns demonstrative*, hic *iste, ille, is*, fere *commonly* distinguuntur *are distinguished* sic *thus*; hic, *demonstrat* points to proximum *the nearest* mihi *to me*; iste, eum *him qui who est is* apud te *by you*; ille, eum *him qui who est is* remotus *at a distance* ab utroque *from both* of us; is, eum *him de quo of whom mentio fit* mention *is being made*.

52. Quum *when* hic et *and* ille referuntur *are referred* ad duo anteposita *to two things or persons going before*, hic, plerumque *generally* refertur *is referred* ad posterius *to the latter*, ille, ad prius *to the former*: ut *as*, Cæsar *Cæsar* habebatur *was accounted* magnus *great* magnificentiâ *for his liberality*, Cato *Cato* integritate vitæ *for the integrity of his life*: Ille *the former* clarus factus *was illustrious* mansuetudine *for his merciful disposition*; huic *to the latter* severitas vitæ *the strictness of his life* addiderat *had added* dignitatem *dignity*.

(a.) Nonnunquam vero *but sometimes* hic et *and* ille habent *have* mutatas vices *their places changed*: ut *as*, Certa pax *certain peace* melior est *is better* tutiorque *and safer* quàm *than* sperata victoria *victory hoped for*; hæc *the one* est *is* in tuâ *potestate in your own power*, illa *the other* in Deorum *in that of the Gods*.

53. Idem *the same* sæpe *often* habet *has* vim copulativam *a copulative force*: ut *as*, Nil *nothing* liberale est *is liberal* quod non idem *which is not also* justum *just*. Operari con-

ferunt *they devote their attention* in res obscuras *to obscure matters*, eisdemque *and these too* non necessarias *not necessary*.

54. VERBA substantiva *verbs substantive*, ut *as*, sum *I am*, fio *I am made*, existo *I am*; verba passiva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling*, ut *as*, nominor *I am named*, appellor *I am called*, dicor *I am said*, vocor *I am called*, et *and* similia *the like* iis *to them*, ut *as*, videor *I am seen*, habeor *I am accounted*, existimor *I am thought*, habent *have* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides*: ut *as*, Deus *God* est *is* Creator *the Maker* mundi *of the world*. Natura *nature* dedit *hath granted* omnibus *to all* esse *to be* beatis *happy*. Ex nitido *from a smart man* fit *he becomes* rusticus *a clown*. Dicorque *and I am called* opifer *helper* per orbem *all over the world*. Da *grant* mihi *to me* fallere *to deceive*, da *grant* to me videri *to seem* iusto *just* sanctoque *and holy*.

(a.) Item *likewise* omnia verba *all verbs* ferè *in a manner* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* adjectivum *an adjective*, quod *which* concordat *agrees cum with* nominativo verbi *the nominative case of the verb* casu *in case*, genere *gender*, et *and* numero *number*: ut *as*, Pii *pious men* orant *pray* taciti *silently*. Malus pastor *a bad shepherd* dormit *sleeps* supinus *with his face upwards*.

55. SUM *I am* et *and* fio *I become* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case* quoties *as often as* significant *they signify* possessionem *possession*, officium *duty*, signum *sign*, aut *or* id *that* quod *which* pertinet *has respect* ad rem quampiam *to anything*: ut *as*, Est *it is* the duty adolescentis *of a young man* revereri *to reverence* majores natu *his elders*. Thebæ *Thebes* factæ sunt *became* populi Romani *the property of the Roman people* jure belli *by the right of war*.

56. Verba *verbs* accusandi *of accusing*, damnandi *of condemning*, absolvendi *of acquitting*, et *and* similia *the like*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* criminis *of the accusation* vel *or* pœnæ *of the punishment*, accusativum *an accusative* personæ *of the person*: ut *as*, Accusat *he accuses* alterum *the other* ambitus *of bribery*. Insimulabant *they accused* eum *him* proditionis *of treason*. Damnatus est *he was condemned* octupli *in eight-fold* damages.

57. Hic genitivus *this genitive case* vertitur *is changed* aliquando *sometimes* in ablativum *into an ablative*, interdum

*sometimes* (cùm *when* de crimine agitur *the accusation is spoken of*) cum *with* præpositione de *the preposition de* : ut as, Si *if* es *you are* iniquus *judex a partial judge* in me *to me*. ego *I* condemnabo *will condemn* te *you* eodem crimine *of the same crime*. Non *damnarer I should not be condemned* capite *to death* ob eam rem *for that matter*. Restituit *he restored* Licinium *Licinius* condemnatum *who had been condemned* de aleâ *for gambling*.

(a.) Uterque *both*, nullus *none*, alter *the other*, neuter *neither of the two*, alius *another*, ambo *both*, et *and* adjectiva *superlative adjectives of the superlative degree*, junguntur *are joined* verbis *to verbs* hujusmodi *of that kind* non nisi *only* in ablativo *in the ablative case* : ut as, Accusas *do you accuse* him *furti of theft* an *or* stupri *indecenty*? Utroque *of both*. Accusaris *you are accused* de plurimis *of very many things* simul *at once*.

58. Verba *verbs* miserendi *of pitying* postulant *require* genitivum *a genitive case*, præter *except* miseror *to pity*, qui *which* jungitur *is joined* soli accusativo *to an accusative case* only : ut as, Oro *I pray* you miserere *pity* laborum tantorum *such great distresses*, miserere *pity* animi *a soul* ferentis *suffering* non digna *things undeserved*. O sola *miserata O you who alone have pitied* infandos labores *the unspeakable calamities* Trojæ *of Troy*.

59. Verba *verbs* reminiscendi *of remembering* et *and* obliviscendi *of forgetting* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*, vel *or* accusativum *an accusative* : ut as, Est *it is* proprium *the property* stultitiæ *of folly* cernere *to discern* aliorum vitia *other men's faults*, oblivisci *to forget* suorum *its own*. Nec *memini nor do I remember* veterum malorum *the old misfortunes* lætorve *nor am I glad* of them. Recordabitur *he will recollect* flagitiorum suorum *his crimes*. Tu *you*, Caius Cæsar *O Caius Cæsar*, soles *are wont* oblivisci *to forget* nihil *nothing* nisi *except* injurias *injuries*. Juvabit *it will be a pleasure* tibi *hereafter* meminisse *to call to mind* hæc *these things*. Si *if* recorder *I recollect* ritè *well* audita *the things I heard*.

60. Verba *verbs* admonendi *of admonishing* exigunt *require* genitivum rei *a genitive of the thing*, accusativum personæ *an accusative of the person*; interdum *sometimes* ablativum rei *an ablative of the thing* cum *with* præpositione de *the preposition de*, interdum *sometimes* geminum accusativum *a double accusative* : ut as, Catilina *Catiline* admonebat *reminded* alium

*one egestatis of his need, alium another cupiditatis suæ of his covetousness. Putavi I thought te that you admonendum esse ought to be admonished eâ de re of that matter. Unoquoque gradu at every step commonemur we are reminded de avaritiâ tuâ of your avarice. Præclarè admones you do well to admonish me me illud of that.*

61. Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative: ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troës the Trojans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optatâ arenâ the wished-for shore.

62. OMNIA verba all verbs fere commonly regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing cujus causâ for the sake of which aliquid anything fit is done, aut or in quam to which actio the action refertur is referred: ut as, Sic so nulum tempus no time abibit vobis will pass by to you iners unproductive. Magna injuria a great injury facta est was done Laomedonti to Laomedon. Pisistratus Pisistratus vicit conquered Megarenses the Megarians sibi for himself non not patriæ for his country. Hoc this patet is evident omnibus to all. Quid what majus greater thing nutricula can a nurse voveat pray for dulci alumno for her dear boy? Appius Appius blanditur mihi caresses me. Civitas Romana the Roman state olim formerly parum vacabat had but little leisure liberalibus studiis for liberal studies. Namque for est mihi there is to me domi at home pater a father, est there is injusta noverca an unjust step-mother. Consultite consult vobis for yourselves, prospicite provide patriæ for your country. Medici physicians timent dread noxam the injurious qualities vini of wine ægris for invalids.

(a.) Sed but delecto to delight, juvo to help, lædo to hurt, exigunt require accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Arbusta trees non juvant do not please omnes every one.

63. Verba verbs comparandi of comparing regunt govern dativum a dative case, interdum etiam sometimes also accusativum an accusative vel or ablativum an ablative cum præpositionibus with the prepositions inter vel or cum: ut as, Sic thus solebam was I used componere to compare magna great things parvis to small. Comparete compare hominem cum homine man with man, rem cum re circumstance with circumstance. Comparemus let us compare partes the parts honestatis of honesty inter se with one another.

64. Verba *verbs* dandi *of giving*, reddendi *of restoring*, et *and* contraria *the contrary*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Fortuna *fortune* dat *gives* nimis *too much* multis *to many*, satis *enough* nulli *to nobody*. Quis casus *what event* ademit *te has taken you away* mihi *from me*? Numeravit *he paid* mihi *to me* æs alienum *the debt*.

65. Verba *verbs* appropinquandi *of approaching*, adjungendi *of joining*, et *and* contraria *the contraries to them*, exigunt *require* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Ingenuus puer *the well-born boy* rudis *being unpractised* nescit *knows not* how hærere *to stick* equo *to a horse*. Miscebat *he used to mingle* mella *honey* forti Falerno *with the strong Falernian wine*. Jungit *he yokes* equos *horses* curru *to the chariot*. Celata virtus *concealed virtue* paulum distat *is but little removed from* sepultæ inertiae *buried indolence*: eripe *te tear yourself* moræ *from delay*.

(a.) Quædam ex his *some of these verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* præpositione *ad the preposition* ad *admittunt* admit *accusativum an accusative case* cum *ad* with *ad*; et *and* interdum *sometimes* verba *verbs* amovendi *of removing* et *and* distandi *of being distant* admittunt *admit* ablativum *an -blative* cum *præpositione with a preposition*, vel *or* (apud *poetas in the poets*) sine *præpositione without a preposition*: ut *as*, Hi *these* appropinquant *are near* ad summam aquam *the top of the water*. Fretum *a strait* separat *separates* Seston Sestos *Abydenâ urbe from the city of Abydos*. Mors *igitur* death *therefore* abducit *nos takes us away* a malis *from misfortunes* non *not* a bonis *from pleasing circumstances*. Narras *you tell us* quantum *how much* Codrus *Codrus* distet *is removed* ab Inacho *from Inachus*.

66. Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding*, parendi *of obeying*, resistendi *of resisting*, et *and* dicendi *of telling*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Pecunia *money* collecta *gathered up* imperat *commands* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every man*. Dic *mihi tell me* quid feci *what have I done*? Quæ *which things* promitto *tibi I promise you* me esse observaturum *to observe* sanctissime *most religiously*. Tempore *in time* animosus equus *the spirited horse* paret *obeys* lentis *habenis the slow reins*. Repugna *I opposed* omnibus ejus *dictis all his speeches*.

(a.) Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, guberno *to govern*, jubeo *to order*, quæ *which verbs* have accusativum *an accusative*

*case*; *tempero to rule, et and moderor to rule, quæ which* admittunt *admit vel either dativum a dative case, vel or accusativum an accusative case*: ut *as, Jubebo I will command fortem animum my brave mind tolerare to endure hoc this. Ille he regit animos restrains their fierceness dictis with his words. Hortor te I exhort you ut gubernes to manage omnia everything tuâ prudentiâ according to your own wisdom. Sit censor let there be a censor qui doceat who may teach viros husbands moderari uxoribus to manage their wives. Decet it is right moderari consilia to direct one's counsels non not voluptate according to pleasure sed but officio duty. Æolus Æolus temperat restrains iras the violence ventorum of the winds. Vix temperavere they scarcely restrained animis their courage.*

67. Verba *verbs irascendi of being angry regunt govern dativum a dative case*: Verba *verbs condonandi of pardoning dativum a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative culpæ of the fault, si if ambo both exprimuntur are expressed; si if alterum tantum one only be expressed, dativum a dative*: Verba *verbs minandi of threatening dativum govern a dative personæ of the person, accusativum an accusative rei of the thing*: ut *as, Nihil est there is no reason quod succenseam why I should be angry adolescenti with the young man. Homines men ignoscunt sibi omnia forgive themselves for everything. Minitatus est he threatened utrique each of them mortem with death.*

68. Verba *verbs fidendi of trusting et and contraria the contrary iis to them exigunt require dativum a dative case*: ut *as, Decet it is fit committere to commit nil nothing nisi but lene what is soft vacuis venis to the empty veins. Diffidit he distrusts perpetuitati the continuance bonorum suorum of his good fortune.*

(a.) Interdum *vero but sometimes verba fidendi verbs of trusting junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative*: ut *as, Confidit he trusts in stabilitate the stability fortunæ of fortune.*

69. Verba *verbs composita compounded cum his adverbis with these adverbs, benè well, malè ill, satis enough; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, ad, ante, circum, cum, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub, super, dis, re, fermè for the most part regunt govern dativum a dative case*: ut *as, Dii may the Gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee! Multitudo the multitude circumfundebatur surrounded on all sides con-*

cionanti *him haranguing*. Judices *the judges* debuerant *ought* constare *to have been consistent* sibi *with themselves*, et *and* convenire *to have agreed* superioribus *with former* judiciis *decisions*. Campus *a plain* interjacens *lying between* Tiberi *the Tiber* et *and* mœnibus *the walls of* Romanis *Rome*. Obstiti *I opposed* omnibus *all* ejus *his* consiliis *plans*. Ausa est *she has dared* postponere *to postpone* vos *you* natis *to her own* suis *children*. Præfecit *he appointed* Brutum *Brutus* to command copiis *the troops*. Proponite ora ipsa *place his very countenance before* oculis *your eyes*. Magnitudine animi *by magnanimity* potest repugnari *one can resist* fortunæ *fortune*. Superfuit *he survived* patri *his father*.

(a.) Nonnulla tamen *but some* ex *his* of *these* interdum *sometimes* regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative case*: ut *as*, Alius *one* præstat *exceeds* alium *another* ingenio *in ability*. Beatum est *it is a happy thing* post mortem *after death* convenire *to meet* eos *those* qui *who* vixerint *have lived* justè *justly* et *and* cum *with* fide *honourably*.

70. Interdum *sometimes* dativus *a dative case* agentis *of the agent* subjicitur *is put* after passivis *passive* verbis *verbs*; interdum *sometimes* ablativus *an ablative* cum *with* præpositione *with a preposition*: ut *as*, Hoc *this* non intelligitur *is not understood* viventi *by any one living* in laboribus *in labours*. Laudatur *he is praised* ab his *by the one*, culpatur *he is blamed* ab illis *by the others*.

71. Sum *with* cum multis aliis *the verb sum with many others* admittit *admits* geminum *a double* dativum *dative case*, alterum *one* personæ *of the person or object*, alterum *the other* rei *of the thing or effect*: ut *as*, Mare *the sea* est *is* exitio *the destruction* avidis nautis *of greedy sailors*. Reliquit *he left* quinque cohortes *five cohorts* præsidio *as a protection* castris *to the camp*. Delegerunt *they chose* hunc locum *this place* domicilio *for a habitation* sibi *for themselves*.

72. VERBA transitiva *verbs transitive* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case*: ut *as*, Cano *I sing* of arma *arms* virumque *and the man*. Non deprecor *I do not deprecate* mortem *death*, inquit *said* he.

73. Verba neutralia *verbs neuter* sæpe *often* habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* cognatæ significationis *of a like signification*: ut *as*, Servit *he serves* duram *a hard* servitutem *servitude* Nec *nor* vox *does* your

voice sonat sound hominem like a human creature; O Dea O a Goddess, certè doubtless.

(a.) Verba neutralia neuter verbs aliquando etiam sometimes also regunt govern accusativum an accusative ejus rei of that thing quæ which significat signifies causam the cause: ut as, Id succenseo I am angry about that matter tibi with you.

74. Verba verbs rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, celandi of concealing, cogendi of compelling, sæpe often regunt govern duplicem accusativum two accusative cases: ut as, Tu modò do but you posce ask veniam pardon Deos of the Gods. Consuefeci I have accustomed filium my son ne celet not to conceal ea these things me from me. Quid why, asine o ass, nunc te doceam literas should I now teach you letters? Quid to what non cogis do you not drive mortalia pectora mortal hearts, sacra fames o cursed desire auri for gold?

(a.) Sæpe etiam often also verba docendi verbs of teaching per ellipsin by ellipsis admittunt admit ablativum an ablative: ut as, Nobilissimus fidicen a very celebrated lyre-player docuit Socratem taught Socrates fidibus the lyre, (i.e. that is, ludere fidibus to play on the lyre.)

75. Quædam etiam verba some verbs also motûs of motion composita compounded cum præpositionibus with the prepositions ad, trans, circum, præter, regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, quorum alter one of which refertur is referred ad præpositionem to the preposition: ut as, Trajecit copias he threw his troops across Iberum the Ebro. Idem he also adigit Afranium jusjurandum compels Afranius to take an oath.

76. Verba verbs quæ which activâ voce in the active voice regunt govern duplicem accusativum a double accusative case, et and verba verbs vestiendi of clothing, habent have post se after them accusativum an accusative case etiam also in passivâ voce in the passive voice: ut as, Posceris you are required to sacrifice exta the entrails bovis of a heifer. Belgæ the Belgians transducuntur are led across Rhenum the Rhine. Induiturque and he is clothed with aures the ears aselli of an ass lentè gradientis which proceeds slowly.

77. QUODVIS verbum every verb admittit admits ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action: ut as, Hi these certant endeavour



defendere *to defend themselves jaculis with darts, illi they saxis with stones.* Miltiades *Miltiades* constituit *settled res the affairs Chersonesi of the Chersonese summâ æquitate with the greatest equity.* Gloriantur *they boast suâ victoriâ of their victory.* Vivunt *they live lacte on milk.* Præstitit *he excelled omnibus all men lepore in wit.* Oportet nos *it becomes us dolere to grieve delicto at a fault, gaudere to rejoice correctione at correction.* Subvexerat frumentum *he had carried corn up flumine Arari the river Saone navibus in ships.*

78. Cùm *when nomen agentis the name of the agent sequitur follows verbum the verb, ponitur it is put in ablativo in the ablative cum præpositione with a preposition :* ut *as, Pompeius Pompey victus est was defeated à Cæsare by Cæsar.*

79. Ablativus *an ablative pretii of the price plerumque subjicitur is generally put after verbis verbs emendi of buying, vendendi of selling, æstimandi of valuing :* ut *as, Victoria the victory stetit Pœnis cost the Carthaginians multo sanguine much blood.* Isocrates *Isocrates vendidit sold unam orationem one speech triginta talentis for thirty talents.*

(a.) Interdum *sometimes genitivus a genitive case subjicitur is put after them, voce pretio the word pretio subauditâ being understood :* ut *as, Nequicquam iis pensi est it is of no consequence to them quid faciant what they do.* Judices *the judges non flocci faciunt rempublicam do not value the republic a straw.*

(b.) Tanti *for so much, quanti for how much, pluris for more, minoris for less, plurimi for very much, cum paucis similibus with a few similar words, sæpe usurpantur are often used post hæc verba after these verbs :* ut *as, Eris you will be tanti of so much value aliis to others, quanti as fueris you are tibi to yourself.* Alexander *Alexander plurimi fecerat Hephæstionem had very greatly valued Hephæstion.*

80. Verba *verbs abundandi of abounding, implendi of filling, onerandi of loading, et and his contraria their contraries, junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case :* ut *as, Antipho Antipho, abundas you abound amore with love.* Sylla *Sylla explevit filled omnes suos all his army divitiis with riches.* Quibus mendaciis *with what lies homines levissimi have the vainest men onerârunt loaded te you? Queror I complain vela that your sails carere reditu have no return, verba your words fide no honesty.* Egeo pane *I want bread.*

(a.) Sæpe etiam *often also* verba egendi *verbs of wanting* et *and* implendi *of filling* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, pinguisque ferinæ *and fat venison*. Indigent *they want* non tam *not so much* artis *skill* quàm *as* laboris *industry*.

81. Verba *verbs* abstinendi *of abstaining from* atque *and* arcendi *of driving away from* regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative case* : interdum *sometimes* cum *præpositione* *with a preposition*, quæ *quidem* *which indeed* semper *usurpatur* *is always used* ante *personam* *before a person* : ut *as*, Lucius Brutus *Lucius Brutus* liberavit *delivered* civitatem *the state* dominatu regio *from the dominion of the kings*. Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* liberatum *are recovered* à quartanâ *from your ague*. Apud *veteres Romanos* *among the ancient Romans* nefas *was considered impiety* arcere *to repel* quemcunque *any mortal* tecto *from one's roof*. Tu *Jupiter* do *you, o Jupiter*, arcebis *repel* hunc *this man* a tuis *from your altars*, a tectis *from the houses of the city* urbis.

(a.) Apud *poetas* *among the poets* (ad usum *Græcorum* *in imitation of the Greek usage*) verba abstinendi *verbs of abstaining from* aliquando *sometimes* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Abstineto *abstain*, dixit *said she*, irarum *from anger* calidæque rixæ *and hot strife*. Desine *desist* tandem *at length* mollium querelarum *from effeminate complaints*.

82. Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, dignor *to think one's self worthy*, muto *to change*, et *and* composita *their compounds*, et *and* supersedeo *to pass by*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as*, Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory*, fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice*. Hannibal *Hannibal* cùm *when* posset *uti* *he might* have reaped *advantage* victoriâ *from his victory* maluit *preferred* frui *to reap only* pleasuræ. Quid *what* puer *Ascanius* is become *of the boy Ascanius*, superatne *does he survive* et *and* vescitur *aurâ* *breathe the air of life*? Equidem *truly* haud *dignor* me *I do not think myself worthy* tali *honore* *of such honor*. Diruit *he pulls down*, ædificat *he builds*, mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round*. Super-sedendum *est* *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words*.

83. *Pascor to feed upon et and nitor to lean upon junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case, vel either sine præpositione without a preposition, vel or cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Pascuntur they feed floribus on flowers et and victu on the food simplicis herbæ of the plain herb. Livor envy pascitur feeds in vivis on the living. Juvenis the youth qui nititur who leans purâ hastâ on a bright spear. Salus the safety civitatis of the state nitebatur depended in vitâ on the life Pompeii of Pompey.*

84. *Ablativus the ablative case dicitur is called absolutus absolute quoties as often as substantivum the substantive construitur is construed in ablativo in the ablative cum participio with a participle, vel or adjectivo an adjective, (interdum sometimes etiam even cum alio substantivo with another substantive,) ut denotet to denote tempus the time vel or modum the manner vel aliam rem comitantem or any other accompanying circumstance; ut as, Archilochus Archilochus floruit flourished Romulo regnante when Romulus was king. Nihil nothing agi potest can be done de hac re in this matter salvis legibus without violating the laws. Exposito it being shown quid iniquitas loci posset what great influence the unfavourable nature of the ground had. Me duce if I am the leader tutus eris you will be safe.*

85. *Ablativus an ablative case partis of the part affectæ affected, et and poëticè by the poets accusativus an accusative, additur is added verbis quibusdam to some verbs: ut as, Micat he quivers auribus in his ears et and tremit trembles artus as to his limbs.*

(a.) *Quædam some of these verbs usurpantur are used (ad usum Græcorum in imitation of the usage of the Greeks, sed but rarissimè very rarely,) etiam also cum genitivo with a genitive case: ut as, Facis you act absurdè absurdly, qui who angas tormentest te yourself animi in mind.*

86. *Exsulo to be banished admittit admits ablativum an ablative, venio to be sold ablativum an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition, vapulo to be beaten ablativum an ablative vel either sine præpositione without a preposition vel or cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Utar tamen but I will use mente my mind quæ which sola alone non exsulat is not banished loco from its place. Respondit he answered se that he malle preferred spoliari to be plundered à cive by a citizen, quàm venire to being sold ab hoste by an enemy.*

*Testis the witness* rogatus est *was asked* an *whether* vapulâset *he had been beaten* fustibus *with clubs* ab reo *by the prisoner.* Sentiet *he shall feel* se *that* he vapulare *is stricken* sermonibus *by the discourse* omnium *of every one.*

87. VERBA infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* adduntur *are put after* quibusdam verbis *some verbs,* et *and* participiis *participles,* et *and* adjectivis *adjectives* : ut *as,* Amor *love* jussit *commanded me* scribere *to write* quæ *what things* puduit *I was ashamed* dicere *to speak.* Jussus *being ordered* confundere *to violate* the treaty. Erat *he was* tum *then* dignus *worthy* amari *to be loved.*

88. Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking,* hortandi *of exhorting,* imperandi *of commanding,* et *and* contraria *the contrary,* raro *seldom* (nisi *except* apud poetas *in the poets*) habent *have* infinitivum *an infinitive* post se *after them,* plerumque *vero* *but usually* conjunctionem *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with the subjunctive mood* : ut *as,* Oro *et* hortor *te* illud *this* I beg *and* exhort *you,* ut sis *to be* diligentissimus *most diligent* in munere tuo *in your office.* Moneo *I warn* obtestorque *and entreat* you, ne hos negligas *not to neglect* these people qui *who* propinqui tibi sunt *genere* *are* near to you *in family.* Themistocles *Themistocles* persuasit *populo* *persuaded* the people *ut* classis *that a fleet* ædificaretur *should be built.*

(a.) Ex his *vero* *but of these* verbs jubeo *to command* et *and* veto *to forbid* etiam *in* pedestri sermone *even in* prose sæpius *junguntur* *are more frequently joined* infinitivo *to an infinitive* : ut *as,* Hannibal *Hannibal* jussit *ordered* Tarentinos *the Tarentines* convocari *to be summoned* sine armis *without arms.*

89. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive mood* semper sequitur *always follows* verba efficiendi *verbs of causing* : ut *as,* Tu *do* you facito *ut* sciam *take care that* I know quicquid indagâris *whatever you find out* de republicâ *about the republic.*

90. Conjunctio *a conjunction* cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive* plerumque sequitur *always follows* verba accidendi *verbs of happening* et *and* similia *the like* : ut *as,* Persæpe *evenit* *it very often happens* ut *that* utilitas *expediency* certet *is at variance* cum honestate *with honesty.* Quoniam *since* satisfeci *I have satisfied* amicis *my friends,* reliquum est *it remains* ut egomet mihi consulam *for me to take care of myself.*

(a.) Sed *but* infinitivus *an infinitive* sæpe sequitur *often follows* contingit : ut *as*, Non contingit *it does not happen* cuius homini *to every man* adire Corinthum *to go to Corinth*.

91. Verba *verbs* permittendi *of permitting*, optandi *of wishing*, cogendi *of compelling*, admittunt *admit* vel *either* infinitivum *an infinitive*, vel *or* ut, cum subjunctivo *with a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Phaethon *Phaethon* optavit *wished* ut *olleret* *to be taken up* in currum *into the chariot* patris *of his* ather. Natura *nature* non patitur *does not permit* ut augeamus *us to increase* nostras opes *our riches* spoliis *by the spoils* aliorum *of others*. Permittes *you will permit* ipsis numinibus *the Gods themselves* expendere *to consider* quid *what* conveniat *is good for* nobis *us*.

92. Oportet *it behoves* et *and* necesse est *it is necessary* habent post se *have after them* interdum *sometimes* infinitivum *an infinitive* mood, sæpius *more frequently* subjunctivum *a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Oportet valeat *the owner should be in good health*. Tanquam *as if* non solum oporteret *it were not only right* sed etiam *but even* necesse esset *necessary* ita fieri *that it should be done* so. Necesse est *it is inevitable* corpus mortale *that a mortal body* intereat *should perish*.

93. Post verba orandi *after verbs of entreating*, imperandi *of commanding*, vel *or* volendi *of wishing*, ut sæpe omittitur *ut is often omitted*, verbum tamen *nevertheless the verb* ponitur *is put* in subjunctivo *in the subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, Rogo atque oro te *I beg and entreat you* pro amore nostro *by my regard for you* colligas te *to recollect yourself* virumque præbeas *and show yourself a man*. Postero die *the next day* rex *the king* edixit *ordered* omnes *all the men* coirent *to assemble* armati *armed*. Vellem *I wish* Dî immortales *the immortal Gods* fecissent *had granted* ut ageremus gratias *that we should return thanks* Ser. Sulpicio *to Servius Sulpicius* vivo *while alive*. Malo *I had rather* sapiens hostis *that a wise enemy* metuat *te should fear you* quàm *than* stulti cives *foolish citizens* laudent *praise you*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* cave *beware* ne sæpe omittitur *ne is often omitted* : ut *as*, Cave existimes *do not believe me that I* abjecisse curam *have abandoned all regard* reipublicæ *for the republic*.

94. Verba infinita *verbs of the infinitive mood* interdum *sometimes* ponuntur *are put* sola *alone* per ellipsin *by the*

*figure ellipsis* : ut *as*, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [*he began*] to scatter abroad voces ambiguas doubtful sayings, et and conscius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me. (Incipiebat *he began*, subauditur hic is here understood.)

95. GERUNDIA in di gerunds in di habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with genitivis genitive cases, et and pendent depend à substantivis on substantives, vel or ab adjectivis on adjectives, nunquam never à verbis on verbs : ut *as*, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsâ in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.

96. Gerundia in do gerunds in do habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with dativis datives et and ablativis ablatives : ut *as*, Illud that commune est is common ediscendo to learning scribendoque and writing. Vitium the disease alitur is nourished vivitque and lives tegendo by being concealed.

(a.) Præpositio the preposition sine without nunquam usurpatur is never used cum gerundiis in do with gerunds in do.

97. Gerundia in dum gerunds in dum habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum accusativis with accusatives, sed but semper exigunt always require præpositionem a preposition præcedentem preceding them : ut *as*, Locus a place amplissimus very honourable ad agendum to plead in. Mores puerorum the characters of boys detegunt se simplicius discover themselves with more plainness inter ludendum whilst they are playing.

98. Si if verbum the verb regit governs accusativum an accusative, gerundivum the gerundive sæpius usurpatur is oftener used quàm than gerundium the gerund : ut *as*, Timotheus Timotheus peritus fuit was skilful civitatis regendæ in governing a state. Duci to be persuaded præmio by a bribe ad accusandos homines to accuse men, est is proximum next akin latrocinio to robbery.

(a.) Utor to use, fruor to enjoy, fungor to discharge, potior to gain, usurpantur are used eodem modo in the same manner : ut *as*, Olim formerly bene morati men of good character videntur appear reges constituti to have been

*appointed kings causâ for the sake fruendæ justitiæ of enjoying justice. Tradiderat ei he had given him omnia bona all his property utenda to be made use of.*

99. Gerundivum *the gerundive in nominativo in the nominative case (et and in accusativo in the accusative, cùm when verbum a verb infinitivi modi of the infinitive mood adjungitur is added vel or subauditur understood)* indicat *indicates necessitatem necessity, vel or officium propriety, vel or possibilitatem possibility* : ut *as, Orandum est one must pray ut sit mens sana to have a sound mind in corpore sano in a sound body. Diligentia industry est is præcipuè especially colenda to be cultivated nobis by us, et and semper adhibenda always to be employed. Putabat he thought eos them observandos to be attended to et colendos and respected à se by him.*

100. SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* habet *has activam significationem an active signification, et and sequitur follows verbum a verb significans signifying motum motion ad locum to a place* : ut *as, Veniunt they come spectatum to see, veniunt they come ut that ipsæ they themselves spectentur may be seen.*

101. Supinum in u *the supine in u* habet *has passivam significationem a passive signification, et and sequitur follows adjectiva adjectives* : ut *as, Quod that which est is fœdum foul factu to be done, idem the same est is et also turpe shameful dictu to be spoken.*

102. VERBA *verbs quæ which non habent have not nominativum a nominative case, neque inflectuntur and are not declined ultra beyond tertiam personam singularem the third person singular et and infinitivum the infinitive, dicuntur are called impersonalia verbs impersonal* : ut *as, Hinc on one side tonat it thunders, hinc on the other æther the sky abrumpitur is rent asunder missis ignibus by lightnings darted down.*

103. Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals, interest it concerns, et and refert it concerns, junguntur are joined quibuslibet genitivis to any genitive cases, et and his ablativis to these ablative cases, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ* : ut *as, Interest it concerns magistratûs the magistrate tueri to defend bonos the good. Tuâ refert it concerns you nôsse to know teipsum yourself.*

(a.) Et also hi genitivi *these genitive cases adduntur are*

*added, tanti so much, quanti how much, magni much, parvi little, pluris more, minoris less, et and similia similar words: ut as, Tanti refert of such concern it is agere to do honesta honest things.*

104. Verba impersonalia *impersonal verbs* regunt *govern* casus *cases* pro sensu *according to their meaning*, more aliorum verborum *like other verbs*: ut *as*, Minimè decet *it does not at all become* oratorem *an orator* irasci *to be angry*. Licuit Themistocli *it was in the power of Themistocles* esse *to be* etioso *indolent*.

105. Præpositio *ad the preposition ad* propriè additur *is peculiarly added* his verbis *to these verbs*, attinet *it belongs*, pertinet *it pertains*, spectat *it concerns*: ut *as*, Vis *would you have me* me dicere *to speak* quod *what* attinet *belongs* ad te *to you?*

106. Decet *it becomes*, attinet, et *and* spectat *it concerns*, quamvis *although* dicuntur *they are called* impersonalia *impersonals* sæpe *often* habent *have* nominativum *a nominative case*, et *and* sæpe *often* inveniuntur *are often found* in tertiâ personâ *plurali* *in the third person plural*: ut *as*, Candida pax *fair peace* decet *becomes* homines *men*, trux ira *savage passion* feras *wild beasts*. Quæ *things* which nihil *attinent* *are nothing to the purpose*. Ea *these things* non spectant *have no reference* ad religionem *to religion*.

107. Accusativus *an accusative case* personæ *of the person*, cum genitivo *with a genitive* rei *of the thing*, subjicitur *is put after* his impersonalibus *these verbs impersonal*, pœnitet *it repents*, tædet *it wearies*, miseret *it pities*, pudet *it shames*, piget *it grieves*: ut *as*, Malo me pœniteat *I had rather repent* fortunæ *of my fortune* quam *than* pudeat *be ashamed* victoriæ *of my victory*. Non solum me piget *I am not only sorry* stultitiæ meæ *for my folly*, sed etiam *but even* pudet *I am ashamed of it*. Miseret nos *we pity* eorum *them*. Si *if* non pertæsum fuisset *I were not weary* thalami *of the marriage bed* and thædæque *of the marriage torch*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* res *the thing* exprimitur *is expressed* vel *either* verbo infinitivi modi *by a verb in the infinitive mood*, vel *or* conjunctione *with the conjunction* quòd *because* et verbo *and a verb*: ut *as*, Non me pudet *I am not ashamed* fateri *to confess* nescire *that I am ignorant* quòd *quòd* nesciam *of what I am ignorant*. Pœnitet me *I repent* quòd *quòd* te offendi *of having offended you*.



108. Pleraque passiva verba *most passive verbs* verti possunt *can be turned* in impersonalia into impersonals in tertiâ personâ singulari *in the third person singular*, et *and* admittunt *admit* post se *after them* dativum a dative agentis *of the agent*, vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* cum præpositione *with a preposition* (qui vero *which* however sæpius subauditur *is usually understood*;) eum vero casum *but that case* objecti *of the object* quem *which* verbum activum *the active verb* regit *governs*: ut *as*, Quo ruitis *whither are you rushing*, generosa domus *a noble family*? male creditur *it is folly to trust* hosti *an enemy*. Migratur *one migrates* morte *through death* in alium quendam locum *to some other place* ex his locis *from these places*.

109. QUÆ nouns which significant *signify* partem temporis *a part of time* ponuntur *are put* in ablativo *in the ablative case*: ut *as*, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

110. Quæ nouns which significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut *as*, Hic *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

(a.) Interdum *sometimes* cùm *when* ætas *the age* hominis *of a man* significatur *is signified*, genitivus *the genitive* usurpatur *is used*: ut *as*, Hamilcar *Hamilcar* duxit secum *took* with him in Hispaniam *into Spain* filium Hannibalem *his son Hannibal* annorum novem *a boy of nine years old*.

(b.) Interdum *sometimes*, sed *but* perraro *very seldom*, duratio temporis *duration of time* significatur *is signified* per ablativum *by the ablative*: ut *as*, Panætius *Panætius* vixit *lived* triginta annis *thirty years* posteaquam *after* ediderat *he had published* libros *his books* de officiis *about duties*.

111. SPATIUM *the space* loci *of a place* ponitur *is put* in accusativo *in the accusative case* cùm *when* motus *motion* to a place significatur *is signified*; in ablativo *in the ablative*, cùm *when* statio *rest* in a place: ut *as*, Jam *now* processeram *I had advanced* mille passus *a mile*. Consedit *he encamped* millibus passuum sex *six miles* à Cæsaris castris *from Cæsar's camp*.

(a.) Interdum vero *but sometimes* accusativus *the accusative* usurpatur *is used* etiam *even* cùm *when* statio *rest* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Locat castra *he pitches his camp* mille ferè

et quingentos passus *about a mile and a half* ab urbe *from the city*. Dicimus etiam *we say also*, Abest *he is distant* bidui *two days' journey* : ubi *where* itinere, vel *or* iter, subauditur *is understood*.

112. OMNE verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* genitivum *a genitive case* nominis *of the name* oppidi *of a city or town* in quo *in which* actio *fit any thing is done*; modò *so that* sit *it be* primæ *of the first* vel *or* secundæ *declinationis the second declension*, et *and* singularis *numeri of the singular number* : ut *as*, Quid faciam *what shall I do* Romæ *at Rome* ?

(a.) Hi genitivi *these genitive cases*, domi *at home*, humi *upon the ground*, militiæ *in war*, belli *in war*, sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* nominum priorum *of proper names* : ut *as*, Præterea *besides* augeant *let them strengthen* rempublicam *the republic* quibuscunque *in whatever matters* poterunt *they can* vel *either* belli *in war* vel *or* domi *at home*. Bos *the ox* procumbit *lies dead* humi *on the ground*. Fuimus *we were* semper *always* unà *together* militiæ *in war* et *and* domi *at home*.

113. Verùm *but* si *if* nomen *the name* oppidi *of a city or town* fuerit *shall be* pluralis *numeri of the plural number*, aut *or* tertiæ *declinationis of the third declension*, ponitur *it is put* in ablativo *in the ablative case* : ut *as*, Colchus *a Colchian*, an *or* Assyrius *an Assyrian*, nutritus *brought up* Thebis *at Thebes*, an *or* Argis *at Argos*. Ventosus *being inconstant*, Romæ *at Rome* amo *I love* Tibur *Tibur*, Tibure *at Tibur* Romam *I love Rome*.

114. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel *or* insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* in accusativo *in the accusative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Atque *and* aliquis *some one* inquit *will say*, Jam nunc *now* then eat *let him go* doctas Athenas *to the learned Athens*.

(a.) Domus *a house* et *and* rus *the country* sequuntur *follow* hanc constructionem *this construction* : ut *as*, Capellæ *ye she-goats*, saturæ *being full*, ite domum *go home*, Hesperus *the evening* venit *approaches*, ite *be gone*. Ego *I* rus ibo *will go into the country*.

115. Nomen *the name* oppidi *of a town* vel *or* insulæ *of an island* additur *is put* after verbis *verbs* significantibus *signifying* motum *motion* à loco *from a place* in ablativo *in the ablative case* sine præpositione *without a preposition* : ut *as*, Nisi

profectus esses *if you had not gone* Româ *from Rome* antè *before*, relinqueres *you would leave* eam *it* nunc *now*.

(a.) Ferraro *very seldom* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* præpositiones *prepositions* inveniuntur *are found* ante nomina *before the names* urbium *of cities*: ut as, Adolescens *while a youth* miles profectus sum *I went as a soldier* ad Capuam *to Capua*. Segesta *Segesta* condita est *was built* ab Æneâ *by Æneas* fugiente *when flying* à Trojâ *from Troy*.

(b.) Interdum etiam *sometimes even* regionum nomina *the names of countries* ponuntur *are put* post verba motûs *after verbs of motion* in accusativo *in the accusative* vel or ablativo *in the ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense* sine præpositione *without a preposition*: ut as, Germanicus *Germanicus* proficiscitur *sets out* Ægyptum *for Egypt*. Dein *then* Piso *Piso* statuit *determined* abire *to depart* Syriâ *from Syria*.

(c.) Apud poetas *in the poets* quodvis substantivum *any substantive* quod *which* sequitur *follows* verbum motûs *a verb of motion* ad locum *to a place*, interdum ponitur *is sometimes put* in accusativo *in the accusative case*: ut as, Dido *Dido* et *and* dux Trojanus *the Trojan leader* deveniunt *come to* eandem speluncam *the same cave*. Refers *you utter* verba *words* non pervenientia *which do not reach* nostras aures *my ears*.

116. ADVERBIA *adverbs* loci *of place*, ubi *where*, ubique *everywhere*, ubicunque *everywhere*, usquam *anywhere*, nusquam *nowhere*, huc *hither*, eo *thither*, quo *whither*, et cætera *and the rest*, interdum *sometimes* habent post se *have after them* genitivos *the genitive cases* terrarum, gentium, loci, locorum, et *and* cùm *when* significant *they signify* gradum *degree*, alios genitivos *other genitives*: ut as, Ubicunque terrarum et gentium *in whatever country and nation* jus civium Romanorum *the rights of Roman citizens* violatum est *have been violated*, pertinet ad *it concerns* communem causam *the common cause* libertatis *of liberty*. Videmini *you seem* nescire *to be ignorant* quo amentię *to what a pitch of folly* progressi sitis *you have gone*. Venturus eram *I was about to come* eo miseriarum *to that degree of misery*.

(a.) Sic *so* post *after* tum, tunc, *then*, genitivus temporis *the genitive temporis* aliquando occurrit *sometimes occurs*, sed *but* non *not* apud optimos auctores *among the best authors*: ut as, Poteram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc temporis *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep*.

117. Pridie *the day before* et *and* postridie *the day after* admittunt *admit* genitivum diei *the genitive diei* post se *after them*, et *and* accusativum *an accusative* partium *of the parts* mensis *of a month*, vel *or* nominum *of the names* festorum *of festivals* : ut *as*, Pridie ejus diei *the day before that day* venit *he came in* Senatum *into the Senate*. Pridie calendas *the day before the calends* abiit *he departed*.

118. Adverbia quantitatis *adverbs of quantity* admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case* : ut *as*, Satis eloquentiæ *eloquence enough*, sapientiæ parùm *little wisdom*.

119. Quædam adverbia *some adverbs* admittunt *admit* eosdem casus *the same cases* qui *as* exiguntur *are required* à vocibus *by the words* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived* : ut *as*, Sulpicius Gallus *Sulpicius Gallus* studuit Græcis literis *studied Greek literature* maximè *most* omnium nobilium *of all the nobles*. Exercitum habuit *he kept his army* quàm proximè *as near as possible* hostem *to the enemy*.

120. Ergo *for the sake of* habet *has* genitivum *a genitive case* post se *after it* : ut *as*, Donari *to be rewarded* ergo *for the sake of* virtutis *virtue* benevolentiaëque *and kindness*.

121. Procul *far from* interdum *sometimes* jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as*, Multi *many men* gessere *have managed* suam rem *their own affairs* et publicam *and those of the state* benè *well* procul *far* patriâ *from their country*.

(a.) Apud poetas *in the poets* et *and* scriptores *prose writers* serioris ævi *of a later age* clam *without the knowledge of*, palam *in the presence of*, et *and* simul *together with*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* ; et *and* aliquando *sometimes* usque *as far as* cum accusativo *with an accusative* vel *or* ablativo *an ablative* : ut *as*, Clam *without the knowledge of* uxore meâ *my wife* et *and* filio *my son*. Simul *his together with these* dicere possum *I may mention* te *you*, candide Furni *o excellent Furnius*. Velabant *they covered* corpora *their bodies* usque pedes *as far as their feet* carbaso *with linen*.

122. CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative* et *and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive* conjungunt *couple* similes casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et *and* tempora *tenses* : ut *as*, Socrates *Socrates* docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et *and* Platonem *Plato*. Nec scribit *he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads*. Occidit *he has died* flebilior *more to be wept* nulli *by no one* quàm tibi *by you*, Virgili *o Virgil*.

(a.) Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructionis of a different construction poscat *requires it should be* aliud *otherwise* : ut *as*, Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussi *for a hundred pence* et *and* pluris *more*. Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice*.

123. Poetæ *the poets* interdum *sometimes* usurpant *use* atque, pro *for* quàm *than* post comparativum *after a comparative* : ut *as*, Arctius *atque* *closer than* procera *ilex* *the lofty ilex* astringitur *is bound* hederæ *to the ivy*.

124. Cùm *when* comparatio *comparison* significatur *is signified* ; tam *so, or as*, sæpè *often* usurpatur *is used*, quàm *as* respondente *answering to it* : ut *as*, Vellem *I wish* tam possem *I were as well able* ferre *to bear* domestica *my domestic* griefs quàm *as* contemnere *to despise* ista *those*.

125. Cùm *when* significatur *it is signified* aliquid *that anything* maximum *esse* *is the greatest* quod fieri potest *which can be*, sæpe *often* superlativus *the superlative* usurpatur *is used*, quàm præcedente *preceded by* quam, interdum *sometimes* by quàm possum : ut *as*, Nihil fuit *nothing was* optabilius *more desirable* mihi *to me* quàm ut cognoscèrer *than to be known* esse *to be* quàm gratissimus *as grateful as possible* erga te *towards you*. Cæsar *Cæsar* contendit ad hostem *proceeded towards the enemy* quàm maximis potuit itineribus *by as rapid marches as possible*.

(a.) Pro quàm *for* quam ante superlativum *maximus* *before the superlative* quantus *as great as* aliquando usurpatur *is sometimes used* : ut *as*, Hannibal *Hannibal* efficit *causes* quantam maximam vastitatem *potest as great devastation as he can* cædibus *by slaughter* incendiisque *and fires*.

126. Donec, quoad, *until, as long as*, et *and* dum *while, as long as, until*, cùm *when* refertur ad tempus *it has reference to time* plerumque *usually* exigunt *require* indicativum *modum an indicative mood*, rarius *more seldom* subjunctivum *a subjunctive* : ut *as*, Dum *while* regna *the kingdom* Priami *of Priam* manebant *lasted*. Milo *Milo* fuit in Senatu *was in the Senate* eo die *on that day* quoad *until* Senatus *the Senate* dimissus est *was adjourned*. Donec *until* Marcellus *Marcellus* rediit *returned*, silentium *fuit there was silence*. Haud desinam *I will not cease* donec *until* perfecero *I have finished*. Dum *until* tertia *æstas* *the third summer* viderit *shall have seen him* regnantem *reigning*. Fortâsse *perhaps* expectas *you are waiting* dum *until* hæc dicat *he says this*.

127. Dummodo *as long as (not of time)* et *and* dum, vel or modo, usurpata *when used* pro *for* dummodo, junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo soli *to a subjunctive mood only*: ut *as*, Omnia postposui *I thought everything of little consequence* dummodo *as long as* parerem *I could obey* præceptis the precepts *of my father*. Oderint *let them hate me* dum provided *that* metuant *they fear me*. Manent ingenia *their faculties remain* senibus *to old men* modo *provided* studium *study* et industria *and industry* permaneat *remain*.

128. Quum *since, as*, significans *signifying* causam *the cause* vel or denotans *denoting* connectionem aliquam *any connection* duarum sententiarum *between two sentences* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*; si *if* usurpetur *it be used* pro *for* quòd *because*, indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Druentia *the Durance*, quum *although* vehat *it comes down* vim aquæ ingentem *a great body of water*, non tamen *will not however* patiens *bear* navium *vessels*. Quum *since* vita *life* sine amicis *without friends* plena sit *is full* insidiarum *of treachery* et metùs *and fear*, ratio ipsa *reason itself* monet *warns us* comparare *to form* amicitias *friendships*. Præclare *you do well* quum *when* tenes *in preserving* memoriam *the recollection* Luculli *of Lucullus*.

129. Quum *as*, sequente tum *when followed by* tum *so*, jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*, sæpius *more frequently* indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Quum multæ res *as many things* in philosophiâ *in philosophy* nequicquam *by no means* satis explicatæ *sint* *have been* tum *so* also quæstio *the question* de naturâ Deorum *about the nature of the Gods* perdifficilis *est* *is very difficult*. Quum cupio *I both desire* consequi *to acquire* ipsam cognitionem *the knowledge* juris augurii *of the laws of sooth-saying*, tum *mehercule and in truth* incredibiliter delector *I am incredibly delighted* tuis studiis *with your studies*.

130. Quum *when*, tempus significans *meaning* time, jungitur *is joined* interdum *sometimes* indicativo *to the indicative*, interdum *sometimes* subjunctivo *to the subjunctive*: ut *as*, Qui *he who* non propulsat *does not repel* injuriam *injury* a suis *from his friends*, quum potest *when he can*, injuste facit *acts unjustly*. Quinque nobiles juvenes *five noble youths* venerunt *came* ad Hannibalem *to Hannibal* quum esset *when he was* ad lacum Averni *at lake Avernus*. Erit illud profectò tempus *the time indeed will come* quum *when* desideres *you will long for* fidem *the attachment* gravissimi hominis *of a most worthy man*.

131. Antequam et *and* priusquam *before that* junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood* si *if* res *the matter* est *is* in dubio *in doubt*, vel *or* si *if* duæ res *the two matters* de quibus agitur *which are spoken of* connectuntur *are connected*; aliter *otherwise* admittunt *they admit* indicativum *an indicative*: ut *as*, Tempestas *a tempest* minatur *threatens* antequam surgat *before it rises*. Omnia *all things* veneunt *are sold* antequam *before* una gleba *one clod of earth* ematur *is bought*. Quàm benè *how happily* vivebant *men lived* Saturno rege *when Saturn was king*, priusquam *before* tellus *the earth* patefacta est *was levelled* in longas vias *into long roads*.

132. Quin et *and* quominus *but that* sequentia *following* negationem *a negation* vel *or* dubitationem *a doubt*, vel simile aliquid *or any similar expression*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Non dubitat *he does not doubt* quin *but that* Troja *Troy* peritura sit *will perish* brevi in a short time. Parmenio *Parmenio* voluit *wished* detertere *to deter* Philippum *Philip* quominus biberet *from drinking* medicamentum *the medicine*. Solitudines *solitude* non protegebant *did not protect* Tiberium *Tiberius* quin fateretur *from confessing* tormenta *the torments* pectoris *of his breast*.

133. Conjunctiones finales *the final conjunctions* ut *that*, quo *so that*, ne *that not*, et *and* aliæ *others* derivatæ *derived* ab his *from them*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Pylades *Pylades* dixit *said* se *that* he Oresten esse *was Orestes*, ut necaretur *that he might be put to death* pro illo *for him*. Oportet *it is desirable* legem *that a law* brevem esse *should be short* quo in order *that* facilius teneatur *it may be more easily comprehended* ab imperitis *by the ignorant*. Vereor *I fear* ne augeam *lest I may be increasing* tuum laborem *your trouble*.

134. Ut, cùm *when* significat *it signifies* tempus *time* vel *or* comparisonem *a comparison*, habet *has* indicativum *an indicative mood* post se *after it*: ut *as*, Ut *since* sumus *we have been* in Ponto *in Pontus*, Ister *the Danube* ter constitit *has thrice been stopped* frigore *by cold*. Ut *as* columbæ *doves*, timidissima turba *a most timid band*, fugiunt *fly* from aquilam *an eagle*.

(a.) Ut, pro *for* ubi *where*, (rarus est usus *it is a rare usage*) jungitur *is joined* indicativo *to an indicative*: ut *as*, Ut *where* littus *the shore* tunditur *is beaten* longè resonante Eoâ *undâ* by the far-sounding Eastern wave.

135. Ut, pro *for* quamvis *although*, jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Ut *although* fueris *you were* dignior *the more worthy*, competitor *your competitor* non est in culpâ *is not in fault*.

136. Utinam *I wish that* exigit *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Utinam *I wish that* tu quoque *you also* mutabilis *esses were changeable* cum ventis *as well as the winds*. Utinam *I wish* ne verè scriberem illud *I did not write that with truth*.

137. Licet *although* jungitur *is joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*; quamvis *although* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* indicativo *to an indicative*, nisi *except* apud *among* poetas *the poets*; quanquam *although* indicativo *to an indicative* sæpius *oftener* quam *than* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*; etsi *although* vel *either* indicativo *to an indicative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*: ut *as*, Improbitas *dishonesty* licet *although* molesta sit *it be troublesome* adversario *to one's adversary* invisa est *is hateful* judici *to the judge*. Id quod turpe est *that which is base*, quamvis *although* occultetur *it may be concealed*, tamen *no* modo potest fieri *can by no means be rendered* honestum *honourable*. Romani *the Romans*, quanquam *although* fessi erant *they were weary* prælio *of fighting*, tamen *yet* procedunt *advance*. Viri boni *good men* faciunt *do* multa *many things* ob eam causam *quod* decet *because it is right*, etsi *although* vident *they see* nullum emolumentum *no advantage* consecuturum *likely to ensue*.

138. Si *if* et *and* nisi *unless*, cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* de quâ agitur *of which one is speaking* vel *existere* *either exists*, vel *posse existere* *or may exist*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo modo *to the indicative mood*, vel *or* præsentis *to the present* vel *perfecto* *or perfect tense* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive*; cùm *when* indicatur *it is indicated* rem *that the thing* non *existere* *does not exist*, exigunt *they require* imperfectum *the imperfect* vel *or* plusquam perfectum *the plusquam-perfect* subjunctivi *of the subjunctive*: ut *as*, Debebas colere *you ought to respect* hunc *this man* patri loco *as you would your father*, si *if* esset *there were* ulla pieta *any piety* in te *in you*. Si *if* unquam *ever* visus sum *I have appeared* tibi *to you* fortis *brave*, certe *certainly* me admiratus *esses you would have admired me* in illâ causâ *in that cause*. Tu cave *do you beware*, nisi *unless* debes ludibrium *you are bent on becoming the sport* ventis *of the winds*. Multa *many*



*things* dehortantur me *tend to divert me* à vobis *from you*, nisi *unless* studium *my affection* reipublicæ *for the republic* superet *overpowered them*.

139. Quasi, tanquam, *as if*, et similia *and similar words*, exigunt *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Quid *why* ego *utor do I use* his *testibus these witnesses* quasi *as if* res *the matter* incerta *esset were uncertain* ac *and* dubia *doubtful*. Cogitandum *est we ought to regulate our thoughts* sic *so* tanquam *as if* aliquis *any one* possit *inspicere were able to look in* intimum *pectus into our inmost hearts*.

140. Quòd, quia, *because*, quoniam *since*, junguntur *are joined* indicativo *to an indicative mood* cùm *when* indicant *they indicate* opinionem *the opinion* loquentis *of the speaker*; cùm *when* aliorum *that of others*, subjunctivo *to a subjunctive*: ut *as*, Refugit *te he flies from you* quia *because* rugæ *wrinkles* et *and* capitis *nives snowy hair* turpant *disfigure you*. Panætius *Panætius* laudat *praises* Africanum *Africanus* quòd *because* abstinens *fuerit he was temperate*.

141. Utrum, ne, an, num, cùm *when* significant *they signify* dubitationem *a doubt* vel *or* obliquam *interrogationem an indirect question*, postulant *require* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*, etiamsi *even if* conjunctio *ipsa the conjunction itself* subaudiatur *be understood*: ut *as*, Difficile *dictu est it is difficult to say* utrum *whether* hostes *the enemy* pugnantes *while fighting* timuerint *feared* virtutem *the valour* Pompeii *of Pompey* magis *more*, an *or* victi *when conquered* dilexerint *loved* mansuetudinem *his clemency*. Legati *the ambassadors* jussi *sunt were ordered* speculari *to see* num *whether* animi *the dispositions* sociorum *of the allies* sollicitati *essent had been tampered with* a rege *Perseo by king Perseus*. Nihil *interest it does not signify* doleam *whether I grieve* necne *doleam or do not grieve*.

142. Ne, cùm *when* prohibet *it forbids*, jungitur *is joined* imperativo *to an imperative* vel *or* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Ne *temne do not despise us* quòd *because* ultro *of our own accord* præferimus *we bring* vittas *fillets* manibus *in our hands*. Tu *ne quæsieris do not you enquire* quem *finem what end* Dî *the Gods* dederint *have assigned* mihi *to me*, quem *tibi or to you*.

143. Omnes *voces all words* quæ *which* expriment *express* rogationem *a mere question* junguntur *are joined*

indicativo to an indicative mood : ut *as*, *Tunc did you veritus es fear id that? Num piget eum is he sorry facti for his deed? Quis fuit who was he qui primus who first protulit produced horrendos enses horrible swords?*

144. QUI *who significans signifying causam the cause exigit requires subjunctivum a subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, *Clusini the Clusians misere sent legatos ambassadors Romam to Rome qui peterent to beg for auxilium aid a Senatu from the Senate. Voluptas pleasure non est digna is not worthy ad quam sapiens respiciat that a wise man should regard it.*

145. Cùm vero *but when relativa propositio a relative proposition supplet locum supplies the place substantivi of a substantive, verbum the verb ponitur is put in indicativo in the indicative* : ut *as*, *Num alii oratores is one class of orators probantur approved of à multitudine by the multitude, alii another ab iis qui intelligunt (i.e. à sapientibus) by intelligent people? Placavi I appeased quoscumque audivi all whom I heard querentes complaining de te of you.*

146. Omnes voces *all words positæ placed indefinitely indefinitely, vel or in obliquâ oratione in an indirect sentence, vel or sententiâ in a sentence pendente ab aliâ depending on another, postulant require subjunctivum a subjunctive mood* : ut *as*, *Innocentia innocence est is talis affectio such a disposition animi of mind quæ as noceat hurts nemini no one. Video I see cui scribam to whom I am writing. Credite believe experto one who has tried quantus how (with what might) assurgat he rises in clypeum against the shield, quo turbine with what force torquat he hurls hastam the spear.*

147. PRÆPOSITIONES *the prepositions adversus adversus against, cis citra on this side, apud near, ante before, penesque and in the power of, intra within, infra below, contra against, supra above, post after, circiter about (of time,) inter between, or among, circa circum around, ultra beyond, juxta near, erga towards, præter besides, or except, et and extra without, ob on account of, prope near, per through, propter on account of, and near, versus towards, trans across, pone behind, secundum according to, ad to, regunt govern accusativum an accusative* : ut *as*, *Quem penes in whose power arbitrium the decision is. Ter thrice raptaverat he had hurried Hectora Hector circum around Iliacos muros the Trojan walls Propter near aquas*

*the waters.* Amicitia *friendship* expetenda est *is to be sought* propter se *for its own sake.* Fugiens *flying from* pauperiem *poverty* per mare *over the sea.* Ludi *games* facti sunt *were celebrated* per decem dies *for ten days.* Per me unum *by my means alone* effectum est *has it been caused* ut *that* libertas *liberty* maneret *remains* in civitate *in the city.* Sophocles *Sophocles* fecit *composed* tragœdias *tragedies* ad summam *till extreme* senectutem *old age.* Locavi castra *I pitched my camp* ad Cybistra *at Cybistra.* Aliquot post menses *after some months* venit *he came* ad Cæsarem *to Cæsar.* Atra cura *ill-omened care* sedet *sits* post equitem *behind the horseman.* Cæsar *Cæsar* transduxit *led* copias suas *his forces* præter castra *by the camp.* Condemnatus est *he was condemned* omnibus *sententiis* by all the votes *præter unam* but one.

148. A (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ab) *from*, absque, sine *without*, coram *in the presence of*, cum *with*, de *concerning or from*, e (ante vocalem *before a vowel* ex) *out of*, præ *before*, for, pro *for*, in *front of*, regunt *govern* ablativum *an ablative*: ut *as*, A te *from you* is principium *the beginning*, desinet *it shall end* tibi *with you.* Discordia est mihi *I have a quarrel* tecum *with you.* Infans *an infant* animosus *spirited* non sine *Dîs* not *without the favour of the Gods.* Non potuit loqui *he could not speak* præ mœrore *for fear.* Stabat *he was standing* pro templo *in front of the temple* et *and* tenebat *was occupying* Capitolia celsa *the lofty Capitol.* Cuncta *everything* erant *was* pro hostibus *in favour of the enemy.* E consulatu *from his consulship* profectus est *he went* in Galliam *into Gaul.* Gessimus *we have administered* rempublicam *the republic* feliciter *successfully*, et *and* ex meâ *sententiâ* according to my wish.

149. In, super, sub, et *and* subter (quod tamen *which however* rarò *invenitur* is *seldom found*) regunt *govern* accusativum *an accusative* vel *or* ablativum *an ablative* pro sensu *according to the sense in which they are used*: ut *as*, Imperium *the empire* Jovis *of Jupiter* est *is* in reges ipsos *over kings themselves.* Venit *he came* in Senatum *into the Senate.* Lucus *was* fuit *there was a grove* in arce summâ *in the highest part of the citadel.* Proferet *he shall extend* imperium *his dominion* super *beyond* et *both* Garamantas *the Garamantes* et *and* Indos *the Indians.* Rogitans *asking* multa *many things* super Priamo *about Priam*, multa *many* super Hectore *about Hector.*

Venator *the huntsman* manet *remains* sub Jove frigido *under the cold sky*. Sub eas literas *after those letters* tuæ yours statim sunt recitatae *were immediately read*. Multaque *and many things* me fugiunt *are forgotten by me* spectata *which were seen* primis sub annis *in my earliest years*. Exercitus ejus *his army* missus est *was sent* sub jugum *under the yoke*. Duxit *he led* Æneam *Æneas* subter fastigia *under the roof* augusti tecti *of a small house*. Tuti safe subter *under* densâ testudine *a thick penthouse of shields*.

150. Tenuis *as far as* regit *governs* ablativum singularem *an ablative singular*, ablativum vel genitivum pluralem *an ablative or genitive plural*, et *and* semper *always* sequitur *follows* casum suum *its case* : ut *as*, Abdidit ensem *he plunged his sword* lateri *in his side* capulo tenuis *up to the hilt*. Et *and* paleari *his dewlap* pendent *hangs down* à mento *from his chin* crurum tenuis *as far as his legs*. Altera sagitta *the second arrow* acta est *was driven* per jugulum *through his throat* pennis tenuis *up to the feathers*.

151. Præpositio *a preposition* in compositione *in composition* nonnunquam *sometimes* regit *governs* eundem casum *the same case* quem *which* regebat *it governed* extra compositionem *out of composition* : ut *as*, Detrudunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock*. Prætereunt *they pass* scopulos *the rocks* Ithacæ *of Ithaca*.

152. Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *with* à, ab, ad, con, de, et *and* aliis præpositionibus *other prepositions*, sæpe *often* repetunt *repeat* eandem præpositionem *the same preposition* : ut *as*, Abstinerunt *they abstained* à vino *from wine*.

153. INTERJECTIONES *interjections* non rarò ponuntur *are often put* sine casu *without a case* : ut *as*, Connixa *having yeaned* reliquit *she left* spem gregis *the hope of the flock*, ah alas! silice in nudâ *upon the bare flint stones*.

154. O, vocantis *uttered by one calling* jungitur *is joined* vocativo *to a vocative case*, exclamantis *by one exclaiming* vocativo *to a vocative* vel *or* accusativo *an accusative* : ut *as*, O nimium fortunatos agricolas *O too fortunate husbandmen*, si nôrint *if they knew* sua bona *their own happiness* ! O formose puer *O beautiful boy*, ne crede *trust not* nimium *too much* colori *to your beauty*.

155. Heu, et *and* *proh alas!* junguntur *are joined* accusativo *to an accusative*, vel *or* vocativo *to a vocative*: ut *as*, Heu pietas *alas his piety!* Heu prisca fides *alas the ancient integrity!* Heu stirpem invisam *alas the odious stock!* Proh fidem *alas the help* deûm *of gods* atque *and* hominum *of men!* Proh sancte Jupiter *O sacred Jupiter!*

156. Hei, et *and* *væ alas*, junguntur *are joined* dativo *to a dative case*: ut *as*, Hei mihi *woe is me*, quod *that* amor *love* est *is* medicabilis *curable* nullis herbis *by no herbs!* Væ misero mihi *wretched man that I am*, quantâ de spe *from how great hope* decidi *am I fallen!*

157. En et *and* ecce *behold* junguntur *are joined* nominativo *to a nominative* vel *or* accusativo *to an accusative case*: ut *as*, Ecce tibi *behold* Italiæ tellus *the land of Italy*. En *behold* quatuor aras *four altars*; ecce *behold* duas *two* tibi *for you*, Daphni *Daphnis*, duoque altaria *and two altars* Phœbo *for Apollo*.

## PROSODIA CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA *prosody* est is pars *that part* Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ *which* docet *teaches* quantitatem *the quantity* (or, *due sound*) syllabarum *of syllables*.

Prosodia *prosody* dividitur *is divided* in tres partes *into three parts*; tonum *the tone*, spiritum *the breathing*, et *and* tempus *the time*.

Hoc loco *in this place* visum est nobis *it is thought* most proper tractare *to treat* tantum *only* de tempore *of time*.

TEMPUS *time* est is mensura *the measure* syllabæ *proferendæ* of a syllable to be uttered (or, *of the pronouncing a syllable*.)

Tempus breve *a short time* notatur *is distinguished* sic *thus* (˘): ut *as* for example, Dōmīnūs *the Lord*; autem *but* longum *a long time* sic *in this manner* (—): ut *as*, cōntrā *against*.

Pes *a foot* est is constitutio *the placing together* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* plurimumve *or more* ex certâ observatione *according to the certain observation* temporum *of the times* (or, *measures of the syllables*.)

Pes *a foot* duarum longarum syllabarum *of two long syllables* est is spondæus *a spondee*; ut *as*, virtus *virtue*.

Longa syllaba *a long syllable* duabus brevibus syllabis sequentibus *with two short syllables following* efficit *makes* dactylum *a dactyl*; ut *as*, scribere *to write*.

SCANSIO *scanning* est is legitima commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versûs *of a verse* in singulos pedes *in every one* (or, *each one*) of the feet.

Scansioni *to scanning a verse* accidunt *there belong* figuræ *the figures* called Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et *and* Cæsura.

I. Synalœpha, est is elisio *the striking out* vocalis *of a vowel* in fine *at the end* dictionis *of a word* ante alteram *before another vowel* in initio *at the beginning* sequentis *of the following word*; ut *as*, vit' viv' *are here put* pro *for* vita vive, *in this verse*: Crastina vita *to-morrow's life* est is nimis sera *too late*, vive live hodie *to-day*.

At *but* heu, et *and* ô, nunquam intercipiuntur *are never struck out (or, cut off.)*

II. *Ecthlipsis*, est *is* quoties *as often as* *m* the letter *m* perimitur *is cut off* cum suâ vocali *with its vowel*, proximâ dictione *the next word* exorsâ *beginning a* vocali *with a vowel*; ut *as*, Monstr' horrend' pro *for* monstrum horrendum: *Monstrum a monster horrendum horrible, informe mis-shapen, ingens vast, cui lumen ademptum deprived of sight.*

III. *Synæresis*, est *is* contractio *the contraction* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* in unam *into one*: ut *as*, alvearia *is pronounced* quasi scriptum esset *as if it had been written* alvaria: ut *as*, Seu *or whether* alvearia *the hives* texta fuerint *were wove* lento vimine *of the limber osier.*

IV. *Diæresis*, est *is* ubi *when* ex unâ syllabâ *of one syllable* dissectâ *being dissected (or, the letters separated)* duæ *two* syllabæ *fiunt are made*: ut *as*, evoluisse pro *for* evoluisse: ut *as*, Debuerant *they ought* evoluisse *to have unwound* suos fusos *their spindles.*

V. *Cæsura*, est *is* cùm *when* post pedem absolutum *after a perfect foot* syllaba brevis *a short syllable* extenditur *is made long* in fine dictionis *at the end of the word*: ut *as*, Inhians *intent upon* pectoribus *the breasts (of the victims)* consulit *she consults* spirantia exta *their panting entrails.*

### *Of the Kinds of Verses.*

VERSUS heroicus *an heroic verse*, qui *which* dicitur etiam *is also called* Hexameter *an Hexameter*, constat *consists* ex sex pedibus *of six feet*: Quintus locus *the fifth place of the verse* peculiariter *peculiarly* sibi vindicat *claims to itself* dactylum *a dactyl*, sextus *the sixth place* requires spondæum *a spondee*; reliqui *the other places* hunc vel illum *have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee)* prout volumus *even as we will*: ut *as*, Tityre o Tityrus, tu thou recubans *lying along* sub tegmine *under the covering* patulæ fagi *of a wide-spreading beech-tree.*

Spondæus *a spondee* etiam *also* aliquando *sometimes* reperitur *is found* in quinto loco *in the fifth place*: ut *as*, Cara soboles *thou dear offspring* deûm *of the gods*, magnum incrementum *the illustrious progeny* Jovis *of Jupiter!*

Ultima syllaba *the last syllable* cujuscunque versûs *of every verse* habetur *is accounted* communis *common.*

VERSUS elegiacus *an elegiac verse*, qui et *which also* habet *hath* nomen *the name* Pentametri *of Pentameter*, constat *consisteth* è duplici Penthemimeri *of two Penthemimers*; quarum *prior the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet*, dactylicos *dactyls*, spondiacos *spondees*, vel *or* alterutros *either of them*, cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: altera *the other Penthemimer* etiam *contains also* duos pedes *two feet*, sed *but* omninò dactylicos *always (or, altogether) dactyls*, item *likewise* cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: ut *as*, Amor *love* est *is* res *a thing* plena *full* solliciti timoris *of anxious fear*.

### *Of the Quantity of first Syllables.*

I. Vocalis *a vowel* ante duas consonantes *before two consonants*, aut *or* duplicem *a double consonant* in eâdem dictione *in the same word*, est *is* ubique longa *every where long* positione *by position*: ut *as in the words*, ventus *the wind*, axis *an axle-tree*, patrizo *to do like his father*.

II. Quòd si *but if* consonans *a consonant* claudat *endeth* priorem dictionem *the former word*, sequente *the following word* item *also* inchoante *beginning* a consonante *with a consonant*, vocalis præcedens *the vowel going before* etiam *also* longa erit *will be long* positione *by position*: ut *as*, Major sum *I am greater* quàm *than* cui *one whom* fortuna *fortune* possit *is able* nocere *to hurt*. Syllabæ *the syllables* jor, sum, quàm, et *and* sit, longæ sunt *are here long* positione *by position*.

(a.) At si *but if* prior dictio *the former word* exeat *ends* in vocalem brevem *in a short vowel*, sequente *the following word* incipiente *beginning* à duabus consonantibus *with two consonants*, interdum *sometimes* producitur *it is made long*, sed *but* rariùs *very seldom*: ut *as*, Ferte bring ferrum *arms* citi *promptly*, date tela *hurl your javelins*, scandite muros *scale the walls*.

III. Vocalis brevis *a short vowel* ante mutam *before a mute*, sequente liquidâ *a liquid following*, redditur *is rendered* communis *common*: ut *as in the words*, patris *of a father*, volucris *of a bird*. Quæ tamen regula *which rule* however non obtinet *does not prevail* in compositis *in compound words*: ut *as*, admiror *I admire*, abripio *I carry off*, sūbruo *I overthrow*, obruo *I overthrow*.



**VOCALIS** a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eâdem dictione in the same word est is ubique brevis every where short : ut as in the words, Deus God, meus mine, tuus thine, pius pious.

1. Excipias you may except genitivos the genitive cases in ius ending in ius : ut as, unius of one, illius of that, &c. and some others ; ubi in which words i the vowel i reperitur is found communis common ; licet although in alterius in the word alterius of another semper sit it is always brevis short ; in alius in the word alius of another semper longa it is always long.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam except likewise genitivi the genitive cases et and dativi the dative quintæ declinationis of the fifth declension, ubi e where the vowel e inter geminum i between two i's longa fit is made long ; ut as in the word, faciei of a face : alioqui non otherwise not ; ut as in the words, rei of a thing, spei of hope, fidei of faith.

Etiam also si the syllable fi in fio in the word fio to be made or done est longa is long ; nisi unless e et r the letters e and r sequuntur follow simul together ; ut as in fierem, fieri : Jam now omnia all things fiunt are done, quæ which negabam I denied posse were able fieri to be done.

Dius heavenly habet hath primam syllabam the first syllable longam long ; Diana the goddess Diana communem hath the first syllable common.

Interjectio Ohe the interjection ohe habet has priorem syllabam the former syllable communem common ; eheu alas semper always producit penultimam makes the penultima long.

Vocalis a vowel ante alteram before another in Græcis dictionibus in Greek words subinde now and then fit longa is made long : ut as, Dicite, Pierides say, O ye Muses : Respice Laërten have regard to Laertes.

Et and also in Græcis possessivis in Greek possessives : ut as, Æneia nutrix Æneas' nurse, Rhodopeius Orpheus Orpheus of Rhodope.

Omnis diphthongus every diphthong longa est is long apud Latinos with the Latins : ut as, aurum gold, neuter neither, musæ of a song, or songs : nisi except sequente vocali when a vowel followeth, cùm when interdum sometimes corripitur it is made short : ut as, præire to go before, præustus burnt at one end.

DERIVATIVA derivatives (or, words derived of others) ferè commonly sortiuntur have eandem quantitatem the same quantity cum primitivis with their primitives (or, the words they are derived from :) ut *as*, amator a lover, amicus a friend, amabilis amiable; primâ brevi the first syllable being short ab amo *as* being derived from the verb amo I love.

Excipiuntur tamen except however pauca a few words, quæ which deducta being derived a brevibus from short syllables, producunt make long primam syllabam the first syllable: ut *as*, como to deck the hair, a coma derived from coma the hair; fomes fuel et and fomentum an assuaging plaister a from foveo to cherish; humanus human, or humane, ab homo derived from homo a man or woman; jucundus pleasant, a from juvo to delight; jumentum a beast of burthen, a from juvo to help; lex legis a law, a from lego to read; macero to cause to waste away, a from macer thin; mobilis moveable, a from moveo to move; persona a mask, a from persono to sound through; rex regis a king, regina a queen, regula a rule, a from rego to rule; secius (comparative) a from secus otherwise; sedes a seat, a from sedeo to sit; stipendium pay a from stips stipis a coin; tegula a tile, a from tego to cover; tragula a javelin (also a drag-net,) a from traho to draw; vox vocis a voice, a from voco to call.

Et and contrà on the other hand sunt there are some words quæ which deducta though derived a longis from primitives of a long syllable, corripiunt make short primam the first syllable: ut *as*, arena sand, arista the beard of corn, arundo a reed, ab derived from areo to be dry; aruspex a soothsayer, ab derived from ara an altar; dicax a jester, maledicus speaking ill, a from dico to speak; ditio power, a from ditis rich; dux ducis a leader, a from duco to lead; fides faith, perfidus perfidious, a from fido to trust; fragor a noise or crash, fragilis frail, a from frango to break; labo to totter, a from labor to slip; lucerna a candle, a from luceo to shine; molestus troublesome, a from moles trouble; odium hatred, ab from odi to hate; paciscor to bargain, a from pax pacis peace; quandoquidem since, a from quando when; siquidem since, a from si if; sopor a sound sleep, a from sopio to lull to sleep.

Et and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studios inter legendum in their reading.

COMPOSITA *compound words sequuntur follow* quantitate *the quantity simplicium of their simple words*: ut *as*, *from* lego legis *to read*, comes perlego *to read through*; à *from* lego legas *to send as an ambassador*, allego *to allege* ~ accusare *accuse by messengers*; à *from* potens *powerful*, impotens *weak*; à *from* solor *to cheer*, consolor *to comfort*.

Hæc tamen brevia *but these words having short syllables enata though derived a longis from long syllables excipiuntur are excepted*: ut *as*, deiero *to swear a great oath*, pejero *to forswear*, a *from* juro *to swear*; innuba *unmarried*, pronuba *a bride's-maid*, a *from* nubo *to be married*.

OMNE præteritum *every preterperfect tense dissyllabum of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long*: ut *as*, legi *I have read*, emi *I have bought*, movi *I have moved*.

1. Excipias tamen *but you must except the words*, bibi *I drank*, dedi *I gave*, scidi *I have cut*, steti *I have stood*, stiti *I have stayed*, tuli *I have borne or suffered*, et *and* fidi, a *from* findo *to cleave*.

2. Geminantia words that double primam *the first syllable præteriti of the preterperfect tense habent have primam the first syllable brevem short*: ut *as*, cecidi *I have fallen*, à *from* cado *to fall*; cecidi *I have beaten*, a *from* cædo *to beat*; didici *I have learned*, fefelli *I have deceived*, momordi *I have bitten*, pependi *I have weighed*, pupugi *I have pricked*, tetendi *I have stretched*, tetigi *I have touched*, totondi *I have sheared*, tutudi *I have thumped*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long*: ut *as*, visum *to see*, latum *to bear or suffer*, lotum *to wash*, motum *to move*.

Excipe *except* datum *to give*, itum *to go*, litum *to daub*, ratum *to suppose*, rutum *to rush*, satum *to sow*, situm *to suffer*, statum *to stop*, et *and* citum, a *from* cieo *cies to stir up*; nam *for* citum, a *from* cio *cis to make to go*, quartæ *of the fourth conjugation*, habet *hath priorem the former syllable longam long*.

Penultima *the last syllable but one tertiae personæ pluralis of the third person plural perfecti activi of the perfect active desinens ending in -erunt habenda est is to be considered communis common*, si *if antepenultima the syllable before it brevis sit be short*.

*Of the Quantity of last Syllables,*

I. A FINITA words ending in a producuntur are made long : ut as, ama love thou, contra against, erga towards.

Excipias except, ita so, quia because, eia well. Item also omnes casus all cases in a ending in a, cujuscunque fuerint generis of whatever gender they are, numeri number, aut or declinationis declension ; præter except vocativos the vocative cases à Græcis in as of Greek words ending in as : ut as, O Ænea o Æneas : et and ablativum the ablative case primæ declinationis of the first declension : ut as, musâ with a song.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, puris pure, brevia sunt are short : ut as, ab from, ad to, caput the head.

III. Desinentia in c words ending in c producuntur are made long : ut as, ac and, sic so, et and adverbium the adverb hic here.

Sed but fac do thou, nec neither, donec until, corripiuntur are made short.

Pronomen the pronoun hic he, et and neutrum ejus its neuter hoc, modo so that non sit it be not ablativi casûs of the ablative case, communia sunt are common.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt are short : ut as, mare the sea, pene almost, lege read thou, scribe write thou.

1. Omnes voces all words quintæ inflectionis of the fifth declension in e ending in e excipiendæ sunt are to be excepted : ut as, fide the ablative case of fides faith, et and die in the day, unâ cum particulis together with the particles indè enatis that are derived from it : ut as, hodie to-day, quotidie daily, pridie the day before, postridie the day after ; item also quare wherefore, et and si qua sunt similia if there be any of the like sort.

2. Et item and also secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation : ut as, doce teach, move move : præter except cave beware, quod which plerumque generally corripit ultimam makes the last syllable short.

Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables in e ending in e producuntur are made long : ut as, me me, te thee, se himself or themselves : præter except conjunctiones encliticas the enclitical conjunctions, que and, n whether, ve or.

Quin et *and* moreover adverbia adverbs in e ending in e, deducta derived ab adjectivis from adjectives secundæ declinationis of the second declension, habent have e the letter e longum long: ut as, pulchre beautifully, docte learnedly, valde pro for valide mightily.

Quibus to which the adverbs ferme, fere, almost accedunt are added: tamen yet bene well et and male ill omnino corripiuntur are always made short.

Postremo lastly, quæ such words as scribuntur are written in Græcis per η with the Greek letter η (or, long e) producuntur are long naturâ by nature, cujuscunque fuerint casûs of whatever case they are, generis gender, aut or numeri number: ut as, Lethe the river so called, Anchise a proper name, cete whales, Tempe the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly.

V. Finita i words ending in i longa sunt are long: ut as, domini lords, magistri masters, amari to be loved.

Præter except mihi to me, tibi to thee, sibi to himself or themselves, ubi where, ibi there; quæ which words sunt are communia common.

Nisi except, et and quasi as if, corripiuntur are made short.

Dativi quoque also the dative et vocativi singulares and vocative cases singular nominum priorum of proper names in is ending in is derivatorum derived a Græcis from the Greeks, quorum genitivus whose genitive crescit increases penultimâ brevi with a short penultima, corripiuntur are short: ut as, dativi the dative cases Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi the vocative cases Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, all proper names.

VI. Finita l words ending in l corripiuntur are made short: ut as, animal an animal, Hannibal a proper name, mel honey, pugil a champion, consul a consul.

Præter except the words nil (contractum contracted a from nihil nothing,) sal salt, et and sol the sun.

VII. N finita words ending in n corripiuntur are short: ut as, an whether, carmen a song, in in, Ilion Troy, Ityn Itys.

Quin moreover, non not, excipiuntur are excepted; et and nomina pauca a few nouns derivata derived a Græcis from the Greeks, quæ which producunt lengthen penultimam the penultima genitivi of the genitive: ut as, delphin delphinis a dolphin; Xenophon Xenophontis Xenophon.

Accusativi quoque *also the accusative cases* masculini *masculine* primæ declinationis *of the first declension* in an et en ending in and en *producuntur are made long*: ut as, Ænean *Æneas*, Anchisen *Anchises*; et and accusativi fœminini *feminine accusatives* in en et ran in en and ran: ut as, Penelopen *Penelope*, Electran *Electra*: cæteri fœminini *the other feminine accusatives* in an ending in an *corripiuntur are short*: ut as, Maian *Maia*, Iphigenian *Iphigenia*.

VIII. O finita *words ending in o* longa sunt *are long*: ut as, dico *I say*, virgo *a virgin*, porro *moreover*, legendo *in reading*.

Modo *only* et and composita ejus *its compounds* excipiuntur *are excepted*; et and scio *I know*, nescio *I know not*, puto *I suppose*, cito *soon*, ego *I*, homo *a man*, cedo *tell me*, quæ *which* corripiuntur *are short*.

(a.) Pauca alia sunt verba *there are a few other verbs* in o desinentia ending in o quæ *which* interdum *sometimes* corripiunt *shorten* ultimam *the last syllable*: ut as, Te peto *I demand you* quem *whom* merui *I have deserved*. Non ero *I will not be*, terra *o earth*, tuus *yours*. Fassa *confessing* fortunam *her fortune* tegendo *by covering* vultus suos *her face*. Sed *but* hæc exempla *these examples* non sunt *are not* imitanda *to be imitated* à tironibus *by beginners*.

Propria nomina *proper names* virorum *of men* desinentia in o ending in o communia sunt *are common*: ut as, Pollio, Nas o.

Duo quoque *also duo two* et and nemo *nobody* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* communem *common*.

IX. Finita r *words ending in r* corripiuntur *are made short* ut as, Cæsar *a proper name*, per *by*, vir *a man*, uxor *a wife*, turtur *a turtle*.

Autem *but* (these words) *producuntur are made long*; far *bread-corn*, Lar *an household god*, Nar *the river so called*, ver *the spring*, fur *a thief*, cur *why*; quoque *also* par *equal to or like* cum compositis *with its compounds*: ut as, compar *a companion*, impar *unequal*, dispar *unlike*.

Græca etiam *also Greek words* in er ending in er, quæ *which* illis *among them* desinunt end in ηρ in the long ē before r; ut as, aër *the air*, crater *a cup*, character *a mark or sign*, æther *the sky*; præter *except* pater *a father* et and mater *a mother*, qr *which* apud Latinos *with Latin authors* habent *have* ultimam *the last syllable* brevem *short*.

X. Finita s words ending in s habent have pares terminationes the like terminations cum numero with the number vocalium of the vowels ; nempe namely, as, es, is, os, us, ys.

I. As finita words ending in as producuntur are made long . ut as, amas thou lovest, Musas the Muses, majestas majesty, bonitas goodness.

Præter except nomina propria Græca Greek proper names, quorum genitivus singularis whose genitive case singular habet has penultimam the penultima brevem short : ut as, Arcas, Pallas, proper names, genitivo in the genitive case Arcados, Pallados.

Et and præter except accusativos plurales the accusative cases plural formatos formed Græco more in the Greek manner : ut as, heros a hero, heroas ; gigas a giant, gigantas.

II. Finitas es words ending in es longa sunt are long : ut as, Anchises the father of Æneas, sedes thou sittest, doces thou teachest, patres fathers.

Nomina in es nouns ending in es tertiæ inflectionis of the third declension, quæ which corripunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing excipiuntur are excepted : ut as, miles a soldier, seges standing corn, dives rich. Sed but aries a ram, abies a fir-tree, paries the wall of a house, Ceres the goddess of corn, et and pes a foot, una cum compositis together with its compounds, ut as, bipes having two feet, tripes having three, longa sunt are long.

Quoque also es thou art, a from sum I am, una cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short : ut as, potes thou art able, ades thou art present, prodes thou profitest, obes thou hinderest : quibus to which penes in the power of potest may adjungi be added.

Item also neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words : ut as, hippomanes a raging humour in mares, cacoëthes an ill habit, Cyclopes giants so called, Naiades fairies of rivers and fountains.

III. Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short : ut as, Paris a proper name, panis bread, tristis sorrowful, hilaris merry.

1. Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producuntur are made long : ut as, musis the dative and ablative case plural a of

*musa a muse or song, mensis, a of mensa a table, dominis to or by lords, templis temples, et and quis, pro for quibus whom.*

2. Item also producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing : ut *as, Samnis a Samnite, Salamis an isle by Athens* ; genitivo in the genitive case, *Samnitis, Salaminis.*

3. Et item and also omnia monosyllaba all monosyllables : ut *as, vis strength, lis strife* : præter except is *he et and quis who nominativos in the nominative case, et and bis twice apud Ovidium in Ovid.*

Secunda persona singularis the second person singular præsentis activi of the present active quartæ conjugationis of the fourth conjugation producit is makes is long : ut *as, audis you hear* ; sic so possis you may be able, velis you may be willing, nolis you may be unwilling, malis you may prefer.

Secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular futuri secundi activi indicativi of the second future indicative active, et and perfecti subjunctivi of the perfect subjunctive, faciunt make is commune is common : ut *as, feceris you will have made, dederis you may have given.*

(a.) Porro moreover in his temporibus in these tenses secunda persona pluralis the second person plural habet has penultimam the penultima communem common : ut *as, dixeritis you will have said, transieritis you will have passed.*

Gratis for nothing et and foris out of doors producent ultimam make the last syllable long.

iv. Os finita words ending in os producentur are made long : ut *as, honos honour, nepos a grandson, dominos lords, servos servants.*

Præter except compos he that hath ability or power in something, impos that is unable, or not having power, os ossis a bone, et and exos without bones.

Et and nomina propria proper names derivata derived a Græcis from Greek names in os : ut *as, Delos an isle in the Ægean sea, Chaos a confused heap of things, Pallados the genitive case of Pallas Minerva, Phyllidos the genitive case of Phyllis, a proper name.*

v. Us finita words ending in us corripiuntur are made short : ut *as, famulus a man-servant, regius royal, tempus time, amamus we love.*

Producentia words that make long penultimam the last syllable but one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case in-



*creasing excipiuntur are excepted: ut as, salus health, tellus the earth; genitivo in the genitive case, salutis, telluris.*

*Etiam also omnes voces all words quartæ inflectionis of the fourth declension in us ending in us longæ sunt are long, præter except nominativum the nominative et and vocativum the vocative case singulares in the singular number: ut as, genitivo singulari in the genitive case singular manûs of a hand; nominativo, accusativo, vocativo plurali in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural manus hands.*

*Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables accedunt are added his to these: ut as, crus the leg, from the knee to the ancle, thus frankincense, mus a mouse, sus a sow.*

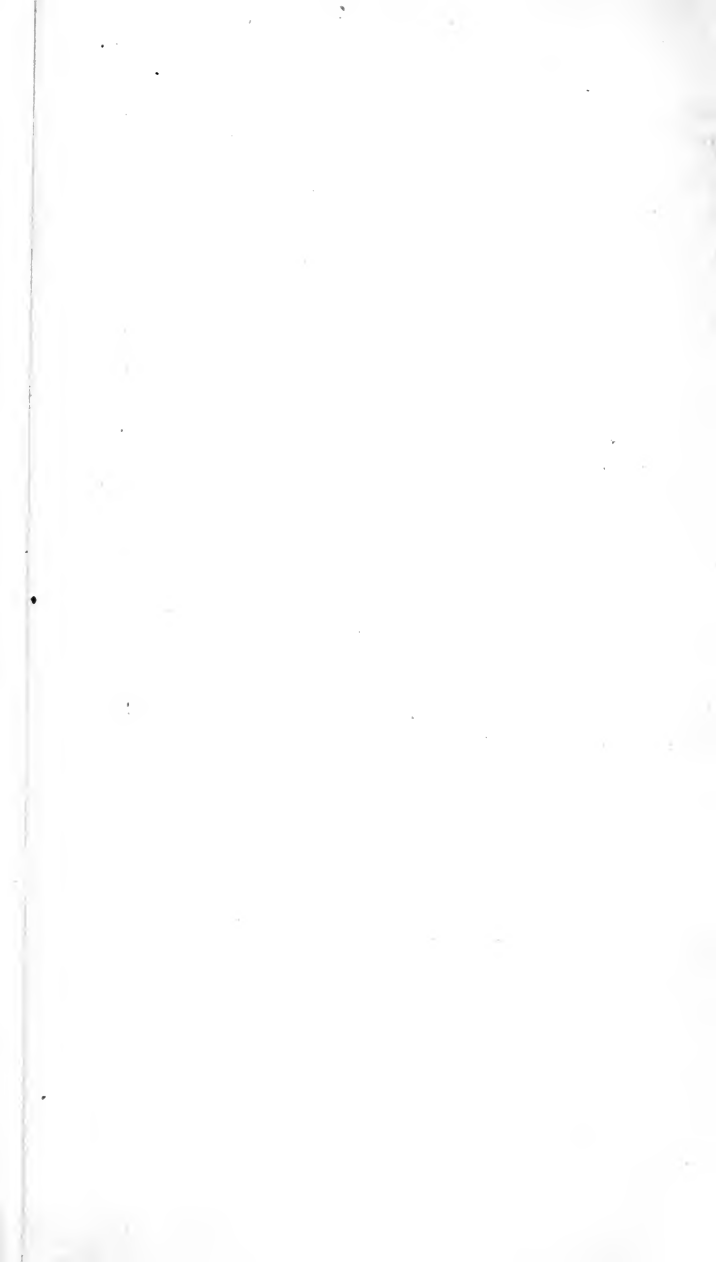
*Et item and also Græca Greek words per ouς diphthongum ending with the diphthong ous, cujuscunque fuerint casûs of whatever case they be: ut as, nominativo in the nominative case Panthus, Melampus, proper names; genitivo in the genitive case, Sapphûs, Cliûs, proper names.*

*VI. Ys finita words ending in ys corripiuntur are short: ut as, Itys Itys.*

*XI. U finita omnia all words ending in u producuntur are made long: ut as, manu the ablative case of manus a hand, genu a knee, amatu to be loved, diu a long time.*

*XII. Y finita nouns ending in y corripiuntur are short: ut as, Tiphys Tiphys.*







**HOME USE  
CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT  
MAIN LIBRARY**

This book is due on the last date stamped below.  
1-month loans may be renewed by calling 642-3405.  
6-month loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to Circulation Desk.

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior  
to due date.

**ALL BOOKS ARE SUBJECT TO RECALL 7 DAYS  
AFTER DATE CHECKED OUT.**

*Occidental College*

**INTER-LIBRARY**

**LOAN**

JAN 31 1974

LD21-A30m-7,'73  
(R2275s10)476-A-32

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

YA 00074

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C045912404

124208



124208

